



[All Rights Reserved]

~~GOLDEN~~  
TORY OF INDIA  
FOR  
HIGH CLASSES

BY

Pt. VISHWANATH, B.A., B.T.

AND

L. JAGANNATH, B.A., B.T.

(Gold Medallist, Education Department, Punjab)

Senior General Knowledge Teacher

D. A.-V. High School, Lahore.

PUBLISHERS :

**Kashmiri Lal & Sons,**

BOOKSELLERS,

Mohan Lal Road, Lahore.

Published by  
Pt. Kashmiri Lal  
& Sons,  
Mohan Lal Road,  
Lahore.

(Copy Right)

Printed by  
L. R. Dhawan  
at  
The Central Electric Press  
Mohan Lal Road,  
Lahore.

## PREFACE

In compliance with the importunate requests of a number of our pupils as well as outside customers we have ventured upon an English edition of our Golden History of India.

This book is practically a literal translation of our Golden Tarikh-i-Hindustan and retains the distinctive features of that book *viz* :—

1. It is written in strict accordance with the University Syllabus which has also been appended.

2. The language is easy enough to be understood by an average student of the 9th and 10th classes.

3. Unnecessary details have been purposely omitted. Only important events have been described in a way so as to enable an average student to master them with ease.

4. In the case of questions set at the University Matriculation Examination, the year has also been mentioned. Important questions have been marked thus **U.E.**.

5. Particular care has been taken in reading proofs, so that the book may be free from misprints especially in the case of dates.

6. The book is based on a study of numerous standard works.

7. Historical maps have been inserted, which will serve a useful purpose. They will enable the students not only to learn the subject better but also to fill in the outline if such a question is set at the examination. A special feature of these maps is that their outlines coincide with the outlines of the present day Indian Empire.

In short we have done our level best to make the book as useful to students as possible.

*Our special thanks are due to those teachers who, though we have not the pleasure of their personal acquaintance have, nevertheless, recommended our books to their students or written appreciatory letters to us.*

AUTHORS

## USEFUL HINTS ON ANSWERING A QUESTION PAPER IN HISTORY

(1) When the question paper is handed over to you, *read it from the beginning to the end.* Your first reading should be cursory, but your second reading should be thorough. Do not miss a single word.

(2) *Pay special attention to the instructions* given by the examiner (generally printed in italics or small capitals). They are, by far, the most important part of the paper.

(3) Begin answering questions the answers to which you know best.

(4) The length of an answer depends upon the number of marks a question carries. If a question carries low marks, do not spend much time on it.

It has frequently come to our notice that in answering questions on notes, candidates write four or five pages in answer to a part of the question carrying three marks only. This is a bad habit. In the first place such students cannot get more than three marks for it, secondly they have no time left to answer other questions fully. They scribble out at the end, "Sorry, no time." This leaves the examiner cold. He may be sorry for the candidate, *but it is not in his power to award marks.*

(5) As regards dates (year of an event) either give correct dates or don't give them at all. Do not give wrong dates.

(6) Answer every part of a question. If you do not know a question fully, answer as much of it as you know. *For every right thing written, you get marks.*

(7) Divide every answer into parts. Answer every part in a new paragraph and if possible give a heading for every part. An examiner does not like lengthy answers.

(8) Before beginning your answer read the question carefully, and answer it according to its wording. Most candidates reproduce an answer that their teacher has dictated to them or that they have read in a help book. A change in the wording of a question necessitates a change in the wording of its answer.

(9) Answer the question, the whole question and nothing but the question. That is, do not leave out anything asked and do not give anything not asked.

(10) If possible give a brief summary of the answer in the first two or three sentences. Then explain the whole thing at length.

(11) If you are required to write a note on a historical personage, do not make general statements such as, he was a very brave man, he was a very virtuous man etc. *State what part he played in history*, so that he came to be known as a historical personage.

(12) When describing a war, describe in separate paragraphs (a) the causes, (b) chief events and (c) the result. *Each of these headings carries separate marks.*

(13) *Do not fail to leave a sufficient margin.* The examiner awards marks in the margin. It irritates the examiner as well as the scrutinizer if you leave no margin.

(14) The numbering of the answers should correspond to the numbering of the questions. If you begin your paper with the fourth question, put down No. 4 in the margin and not No. 1. *Do not fail to number your answers.*

(15) The use of the red pencil secures no better marks. On the other hand, it irritates the examiner, since he, too, is required to award marks in red pencil.

(16) *Do not answer more than the required number of questions.* It is not honest, and the trick is invariably detected.

(17) Revise each answer as finished, and when you have finished the whole paper, revise the whole of it. Try to improve your answers as best as you can. *It is no merit finishing a three hours' paper in one hour and a half.* Go on revising your answers till the time is up.

(18) Now-a-days candidates are given one answer book and when it is finished, they are given loose papers. In their confusion sometimes candidates stitch such loose papers wrongly or take too long arranging them serially. *It is advisable that you should number each loose paper.* It will save time in stitching them properly.

and the conquest of Bengal—Mir Jaffar and Mir Qasim—Haidar Ali.

28. Warren Hastings—Rohilla War—Regulating Act—Nand Kumar—the Begums of Oudh—Raja Chet Singh—Pitt's India Bill.

29. Cornwallis—Permanent Settlement of Bengal—Sir John Shore and the non-intervention policy.

30. Lord Wellesley—War with Mysore—Subsidiary System of Alliances—Wars with the Marathas—Nana Farnavis—Treaty of Bassein—Anglo-Maratha Wars.

31. Lord Minto—Rise of Maharaja Ranjit Singh—Metcalf's mission to the court of Ranjit Singh.

32. Marquis of Hastings—The Nepal War—The extirpation of the Pindaris—The last Maratha War.

33. Lord Amherst—The First Burmese War.

34. Lord William Bentinck—his Reforms: Social Administrative and Educational.

35. Lord Auckland and Ellenborough—First Afghan War—Annexation of Sind.

36. Lord Hardinge—First Sikh War.

37. Lord Dalhousie—Second Sikh War—Annexation of the Punjab—Second Burmese War—Doctrine of Lapse—his Reforms.

38. Lord Canning—The Indian Mutiny—Its causes, events and consequences—Queen Victoria's Proclamation.

39. India under the Crown—Lord Canning.

40. Lord Lytton—Second Afghan War.

41. Lord Dufferin—Third Burmese War—The Indian National Congress.

42. Lord Curzon—his internal administration—Partition of Bengal—Creation of N. W. F. Province—Reforms of various Departments—Indian Universities Act—Ancient Monuments Act—Punjab Land Alienation Act.

43. Lord Minto—Minto-Morley Reforms.

44. Lord Hardinge—The Coronation Durbar—The Great War and India's share in it.

45. Lord Chelmsford—The Declaration of August, 1917—Rowlter Act—Satyagraha Movement—Government of India Act, 1919.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
1. Effect of Geography on History	... 1
2. Sources of Early Indian History	... 3
<b>The Hindu Period</b>	... 6
✓ 3. The Aryans	... 6
4. Religious Books of the Early Aryans	... 10
5. The Epic Period	... 13
6. The Caste System	... 18
✓ 7. Buddhism and Jainism	... 22
✓ 8. Alexander's Invasion	... 30
✓ 9. Chandragupta Maurya	... 36
✓ 10. Asoka	... 42
11. Kushan Dynasty and Kanishka	... 49
12. The Gupta Dynasty	... 52
13. The Hun Invasion	... 59
14. Harsha Vardhana	... 60
15. The Rajputs	... 65
16. Hindu Culture and Colonies	... 68
<b>The Muslim Period</b>	
17. Islam and the Conquest of Sind	... 71
18. Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni	... 74
19. Shahab-ud-Din or Muhammad Ghori	... 77
20. The Slave Dynasty	... 82
21. The Khilji Dynasty	... 87
22. The Tughlak Dynasty	... 94
23. The Sayyad Dynasty	... 102
24. The Lodhi Dynasty	... 103
25. The Bahmani and Vijaynagar Kingdoms	... 105
26. Mutual influence of Hinduism and Islam	... 108
27. Zahir-ud-Din Babur	... 111
28. Nasir-ud Din Humayun	... 114
29. Sher Shah Suri	... 116
30. Jalal-ud-Din Akbar	... 121
31. Nur-ud-Din Jehangir	... 135
32. Shah Jehan	... 139



and the conquest of Bengal—Mir Jaffar and Mir Qasim—Haidar Ali.

23. Warren Hastings—Rohilla War—Regulating Act—Nand Kumar—the Begums of Oudh—Raja Chet Singh—Pitt's India Bill.

29. Cornwallis—Permanent Settlement of Bengal—Sir John Shore and the non-intervention policy.

30. Lord Wellesley—War with Mysore—Subsidiary System of Alliances—Wars with the Marathas—Nana Farnavis—Treaty of Bassein—Anglo-Maratha Wars.

31. Lord Minto—Rise of Maharaja Ranjit Singh—Metcalf's mission to the court of Ranjit Singh.

32. Marquis of Hastings—The Nepal War—The extirpation of the Pindaris—The last Maratha War.

33. Lord Amherst—The First Burmese War.

34. Lord William Bentinck—his Reforms: Social, Administrative and Educational.

35. Lord Auckland and Ellenborough—First Afghan War—Annexation of Sind.

36. Lord Hardinge—First Sikh War.

37. Lord Dalhousie—Second Sikh War—Annexation of the Punjab—Second Burmese War—Doctrine of Lapse—his Reforms

38. Lord Canning—The Indian Mutiny—Its causes, events and consequences—Queen Victoria's Proclamation.

39. India under the Crown—Lord Canning.

40. Lord Lytton—Second Afghan War.

41. Lord Dufferin—Third Burmese War—The Indian National Congress.

42. Lord Curzon—his internal administration—Partition of Bengal—Creation of N. W. F. Province—Reforms of various Departments—Indian Universities Act—Ancient Monuments Act—Punjab Land Alienation Act.

43. Lord Minto—Minto-Morley Reforms.

44. Lord Hardinge—The Coronation Durbar—The Great War and India's share in it.

45. Lord Chelmsford—The Declaration of August, 1917—Rowlatt Act—Satyagraha Movement—Government of India Act, 1919.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
1. Effect of Geography on History	... 1
2. Sources of Early Indian History	... 3
The Hindu Period	... 6
✓ 3. The Aryans	... 6
4. Religious Books of the Early Aryans	... 10
5. The Epic Period	... 13
6. The Caste System	... 18
✓ 7. Buddhism and Jainism	... 22
✓ 8. Alexander's Invasion	... 30
✓ 9. Chandragupta Maurya	... 36
✓ 10. Asoka	... 42
11. Kushan Dynasty and Kanishka	... 49
12. The Gupta Dynasty	... 52
13. The Hun Invasion	... 59
14. Harsha Vardhana	... 60
15. The Rajputs	... 65
16. Hindu Culture and Colonies	... 68

## The Muslim Period

17. Islam and the Conquest of Sind	... 71
18. Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni	... 74
19. Shahab-ud-Din or Muhammad Ghori	... 77
20. The Slave Dynasty	... 82
21. The Khilji Dynasty	... 87
22. The Tughlak Dynasty	... 94
23. The Sayyad Dynasty	... 102
24. The Lodhi Dynasty	... 103
25. The Bahmani and Vijaynagar Kingdoms	... 105
26. Mutual influence of Hinduism and Islam	... 108
27. Zahir-ud-Din Babur	... 111
28. Nasir-ud Din Humayun	... 114
29. Sher Shah Suri	... 116
30. Jalal-ud-Din Akbar	... 121
31. Nur-ud-Din Jehangir	... 135
32. Shah Jehan	... 139

	PAGE
✓ 33. Aurangzeb Alamgir	... 144
34. The Rise of the Marathas and Sivaji	... 151
35. Successors of Aurangzeb	... 156
36. Rise of the Sikhs	... 160
✓ 37. Rise of the Peshwas	... 163

### The British Period

38. The coming of the Europeans	... 168
39. The Struggle between the English and the French	... 173
✓ 40. Conquest of Bengal	... 178
41. Mir Jafar and Mir Qasim	... 181
✓ 42. Robert Clive	... 183
43. Haidar Ali	... 188
✓ 44. Warren Hastings ; Governor	... 190
✓ 45. Warren Hastings ; First Governor-General	... 194
46. Lord Cornwallis	... 200
47. Sir John Shore	... 204
✓ 48. Lord Wellesley	... 205
49. Sir George Barlow	... 214
50. Lord Minto I	... 214
51. Marquess of Hastings	... 220
52. Lord Amherst	... 226
✓ 53. Lord William Bentinck	... 228
54. Sir Charles Metcalfe	... 232
55. Lord Auckland and Lord Ellenborough	... 232
56. Lord Hardinge I	... 235
✓ 57. Lord Dalhousie	... 237
58. Lord Canning	... 244
59. Lord Canning ; First Viceroy	... 249
60. Lord Elgin I	... 250
61. Sir John Lawrence	... 251
62. Lord Mayo	... 252
63. Lord Northbrook	... 252
64. Lord Lytton	... 253
✓ 65. Lord Ripon	... 255
66. Lord Dufferin	... 257
67. Lord Lansdowne	... 259
68. Lord Elgin II	... 260
✓ 69. Lord Curzon	... 260

	PAGE
70. Lord Minto II	... 265
71. Lord Hardinge II	... 266
72. Lord Chelmsford	... 268
73. Lord Reading	... 272
74. Lord Irwin	... 273
75. Lord Willingdon	... 275
76. Lord Linlithgow	... 279
77. Lord Wavell	... 281
78. Supplement I	... 281
79. Supplement II	... 283
80. Some Well-known Dates	... 288

## :      LIST OF MAPS

	PAGE
1. Alexander's Route	... 32
2. Chandragupta Maurya's Empire	... 38
3. The Empire of Asoka	... 44
4. The Empire of Kanishka	... 51
5. The Gupta Empire	... 55
6. The Empire of Harsha	... 62
7. India under Ala-ud-Din	... 91
8. India under Akbar	... 126
9. India under Aurangzeb	... 147
10. India under Wellesley	... 212
11. Ranjit Singh's Empire	... 218
12. India under Lord Hastings	... 223
13. India under Lord Dalhousie	... 240

---

# GOLDEN HISTORY

## OF

### INDIA

#### EFFECT OF GEOGRAPHY ON HISTORY

The geography of a country has a great effect on her history. Physical features like natural boundaries, mountains, plains, coast, deserts, climate etc., exert a great influence on the life, habits and civilization of the people inhabiting that country. In fact *Geography is the basis of all historical knowledge*. So, first of all it is necessary to see how the physical features of India have influenced her history.

Q. How have the physical features of India influenced her history? [P. U. 1918-25-27-28-39]

As regards physical features India can be divided into three main regions:—

1. The Himalayas with their eastern and western offshoots.
2. The Plain of Northern India.
3. The Plateau of the Deccan.

#### 1. The Influence of the Himalayas

1. The Himalayas run along the northern boundary of India from Kashmir to Assam. They are so high that it is *almost impossible to cross them*. For this reason *there have been very few invasions from the north*.

2. The eastern offshoots of the Himalayas consisting of Garo, Khasi, Jaintia and Naga hills lie in Assam. They are not very high, but on account of heavy rains they are covered with dense forests which are almost impenetrable. *Thus from the eastern side too there have been very few invasions, though people from those regions have come and settled in India.*

It is on account of these forests and hills that Burma which formed part of British India for about a century and has recently been separated (April 1937) from it has had a history of her own.

3. The western offshoots of the Himalayas consist of the Sufed Koh, the Sulaiman Range and the Kirthar Range. They are not very high and are not covered with any dense forests. But they contain the well-known passes of Khyber, Kurram, Tochi, Gomal, Bolan etc. For this reason *almost all the invaders by land, (Aryans, Iranians, Greeks, Sythians, Huns, Turks, Mongols, Afghans, etc.) entered India through these passes.* This is also the reason why there are a number of cantonments on the north west frontier of India while there are very few cantonments along the Himalayas.

## 2. The Influence of the Northern Plain

1. The plain of northern India is one of the most fertile plains in the world. Its fertility and wealth have attracted foreign invaders. The hot climate and the immense wealth of the country made the people lazy and ease-loving so that very often they were defeated by the foreign invaders. *For this reason there have been innumerable invasions of India.*

2. On account of the fertility of the country the people had not to work hard to earn their livelihood. This gave them enough *leisure which directed their attention to spirituality, literature and philosophy.*

3. Another result of the immense wealth of the country and the fondness of the people for spirituality and philosophy was that they never felt any desire to bring neighbouring countries under subjection. The Hindus *did* colonise foreign lands and spread their culture abroad but they were never an *Imperial nation.*

4. The North-Western Frontier Province and the Punjab lay in the way of the foreign invaders. Life and property were not safe there. Hence these provinces remained for a long time behind other provinces in culture and education.

5. The Punjab is bounded on the north by the mountains and on the south by the barren and waterless deserts of Rajputana. Invaders had to pass through *Delhi* on their way to the Gangetic Valley. Delhi thus became the gateway of the fertile Gangetic Valley. The fact that it was the capital of several empires enhanced its importance. Hence places near it—Panipat, Karnal, Tarain, Thaneswar—were scenes of important and even decisive battles.

6. The barren and waterless desert of Rajputana has also played some part in the history of India. Foreign invaders found it difficult and even useless to occupy this region. Whenever a foreign invader occupied a portion of this region, his empire was short-lived. Hence Rajputs established small independent states here, many of which still survive.

### 3. Influence of the Deccan Plateau

1. The Deccan is bounded on the north by the Vindhya and Satpura hills which are overgrown with dense forests. It was difficult to cross. For this reason the Deccan has remained separate from Northern India and *has not played any important part in the history of India*. On a few occasions the kings of Northern India have conquered it, but they could not establish their authority there.

2. One result of this physical separation of the Deccan from Northern India has been that both these countries have developed different kinds of civilizations. The life, manners and customs of the people inhabiting the northern plain and the southern plateau are quite different from each other.

3. In the Deccan hills it was easy to build impregnable forts. The Marathas built such forts from which they successfully defied the mighty Mughal armies.

## SOURCES OF EARLY INDIAN HISTORY

Q. What are the sources of the early history of India? Clearly discuss the importance of each.

Sources of early Indian History. The early history of India is neither certain nor continuous. The



that there is a lack of historical books. Still there are some sources by means of which we derive a workable knowledge of the early history of the country. These sources of early Indian History can be classified as follows :—

1. **Religious Books.** The religious books of the Hindus, e. g., the Vedas, the Brahmanas, the Upanishads, the Ramayana, the Mahabharata, the Puranas, etc., and those of the Buddhists and Jains throw sufficient light on the state of the country in those days. The Vedas are a source of information about the ancient Aryan culture, while the Ramayana and the Mahabharata describe the culture of the Epic period. The Buddhist and Jain books supply information about the period when these religions flourished.

2. **Historical Books.** Ancient rajas were fond of having the events of their reigns recorded. A great many of such books have been destroyed on account of the change of governments, still some are available and these tell us about historical events during the reigns of those kings. *Harsha Charita* of Bana describes the reign of Harsha, the *Raj Tarangini* of Kalhan describes the history of Kashmir and *Prithvi Raj Rasau* of Chand Bardai describes the reign of Prithvi Raj Chauhan.

3. **Inscriptions.** Several *inscriptions i. e.*, writings inscribed on rocks, stone and copper plates are available, which describe the important events during the reigns of the particular kings. The inscriptions of Asoka are very well-known and throw a flood of light on his reign. An edict of Samudragupta has been discovered inscribed on a pillar in the Allahabad fort.

4. **Coins.** Ancient coins that have been discovered have helped a great deal in giving us some information about the historical events of those days. Besides giving us the names of several rulers and the dynasties to which they belonged, they have been specially useful in settling doubtful dates. These coins are perhaps our only source of information about the Bactrian and Indo-Greek dynasties.

5. **Ancient Ruins.** Historical buildings, monuments and architecture of ancient times throw some light on the events of those times. The excavations at *Taxila* have given us better knowledge of the Kushan period, those at *Pataliputra* have added to our information about the Mauryan dynasty, while the excavations at *Mohenjo Daro* (Sind) and *Harappa* (Montgomery district) have thrown a flood of light on the ancient civilization of the Indus valley. Recently Sir Aurel Stein has discovered ancient ruins in Central Asia which lead to the conclusion that Indian civilization found way even outside India.

6. **Foreign Accounts.** From time to time foreign travellers have visited India and they wrote accounts of what they saw or heard. Their books tell us much about several kings. *Megasthenes* wrote about the reign of Chandragupta Vikramaditya and *Hieun Tsang* about that of Harsha. *Alberuni* a famous scholar of the time of Mahmud of Ghazni wrote his '*Tahqiq-i-Hind*' wherein he gives an account of India of his times.

---

# THE HINDU PERIOD

## CHAPTER I THE ARYANS

**Q.** Who were the Aryans ? What was their original home ? When and why did they come to India ?

The Aryans are a well-known and important race of mankind. They are fair, tall, and well-built people. Even in those early times they were a highly civilized people and were well-versed in military arts. They reared cattle and practised agriculture. Some portion of the population of India, the Iranians and several European nations *e. g.*, the English, the Germans and the French are descended from this race.

**Their Home.** We cannot say for certain which was the original home of the Aryans. Historians hold different opinions on this subject. (1) Some scholars think that Central Europe was their original home, (2) others (like late Mr. Tilak) think that they came from the Arctic regions, (3) still others are of the opinion that they did not come from outside and they lived in the Punjab, (4) some even regard Tibet as their original home, (5) but the generally accepted view is that *they lived somewhere near the Caspian Sea in Central Asia*. This region is now called Russian Turkistan. In very early times the Aryans left their original home and settled in Europe, Iran and India.


**Leaving Home.** It is difficult to say for certain why the Aryans left their original home. There can be several reasons. (i) It is possible that when the Aryans grew in numbers their original home was not sufficient to support them, or (ii) their pastures may have dried up, or (iii) possibly they may have been forced to leave their home by some invading tribes.

After leaving their country some of them went to Europe, some migrated to Iran and some found their way to India

across Hindu Kush and the Khyber and other passes. *That branch of the Aryans who came to India was called the Indo-Aryans.* The history of India really begins with the advent of the Aryans.

**The Advent of the Aryans.** Historians differ even about the time when the Aryans came into India. This much is certain that they did not come here all at one time, but their different batches entered India at different times. European scholars place the period of their coming between 2000 B. C. and 1500 B. C. But Indian historians push the date far backwards, *i. e.*, 4000 B. C. or even earlier.

**The Spread of the Aryans** The Aryans first settled in the modern Frontier Province and the Punjab (then called Saptasindhu) and they lived here for several centuries. We learn about the civilization of those early times from the Vedas, the sacred books of the Aryans. This period is called the Vedic Period. Afterwards they spread into the valley of the Jumna and the Ganges where they established many powerful kingdoms. This period is called the Epic Period because during this period the Aryans displayed deeds of valour. The two epics *viz.*, the Ramayana and the Mahabharata describe this period. Gradually the Aryans spread all over the northern plain and gave the name of *Aryavarta* to this country. During their spread the Aryans had to carry on a long and bitter fight with the aborigines, *i. e.*, Dravidians, whom, as is natural with the conquerors, they contemptuously called Dasas or Dasyus. Since the Aryans were physically stronger than the Dravidians and were better soldiers, they easily defeated them and gradually drove them towards the Deccan. For a long time the Deccan was not influenced by the Aryan civilization, but in course of time this civilization found its way there too. It was Rishi Agastya who spread the Aryan culture in the Deccan.

 **Q.** Give a brief account of the civilization, *i. e.*, the government, religion, and social life of the early Aryans. (V. Important) (P. U. 1914-19-23-28-38-41)

**A. Their Government** In the Vedic period the Aryans mostly lived in villages. The head of a village was called *gramani* but the affairs of the village were managed by a

5. **Their Amusements.** The Aryans had many amusements. They knew singing and dancing and could play on several musical instruments. Every village had its own musician. The Aryans were also fond of the chase, wrestling and chariot races. In short they led peaceful and joyous lives.

## CHAPTER II

# RELIGIOUS BOOKS OF THE EARLY ARYANS

### Shruti and Smriti

Shruti is a Sanskrit word meaning '*hearing*'. Shruti includes those books the contents of which were revealed to the old *rishis* by God. In fact, the Vedas fall under this head for, according to the Hindu view, their contents were revealed to *rishis* in the beginning of creation. But the *Brahmanas*, the *Upanishads* etc, which are based upon the Vedas are also included in the Shruti by the majority of the Hindus.

Smriti means '*remembrance*'. It means those books the contents of which were thought out by the *rishis*, remembered by the people, passed on from sire to son and finally reduced to writing. These *Smritis* contain rules and regulations about the daily duties of a Hindu as well as laws about division of property.

The *Shruti* contains eternal truth and cannot be changed but the *Smriti* can be changed according to time and place. 'Manu Smriti' is the best known Smriti.

*Note.*—The Ramayana and Mahabharata are called *Itihasa*.

**Q.** Write short notes on :—

The Vedas ; the Upanishads ; the Six Schools of Hindu Philosophy ; Manu and his Code ; the Puranas.

The Vedas. The Vedas are the most holy books of the Hindus. They believe that the Vedas are revealed books and have been in existence from the beginning of time.

European scholars, however, hold a different view on this subject. They believe that the Vedas were composed about 2,500 or 3000 B. C. and that the Rig Veda is the oldest of them.

The Vedas are four in number (i) The Rig Veda (ii) The Yajur Veda (iii) the Sama Veda and (iv) the Atharva Veda.

(i) The Rig Veda contains *riches* or praise of gods e. g. Indra, Varuna, Agni, etc. It contains over 1000 *mantras* and is considered the oldest book in the world.

(ii) The Yajur Veda contains *mantras* for sacrifices (*yajnas*).

(iii) The Sama Veda contains *mantras* generally taken from the Rig Veda. This Veda is the source of Hindu Science of Music.

(iv) The Atharva Veda generally contains charms and spells for the prevention of diseases, for injury to enemies or for the attainment of desires e. g., long life, wealth etc. For a long time it was not acknowledged as a Veda.

**The Upanishads.** The Upanishads are the oldest books on Aryan Philosophy and Theology. They discuss such subjects as:—*What is God? What is matter? What is soul? What happens after death? etc.*

The Upanishads are praised and liked not only by the Hindus but some non-Hindus also. Schopenhauer, a great German philosopher considered them the solace of his life, not only in this world but in the hereafter also. Dara Shikoh, the eldest son of Shahjehan held them in high respect. They are about two hundred in number but about ten or twelve of them are authentic.

**Six Darshanas.** There are six schools of Hindu Philosophy called the six *shastras* or *darshanas*. They, too, discuss philosophical problems with clarity and precision. They are as follows:—

(1) Sankhya (2) Yoga (3) Nyaya (4) Vaisheshak (5) Uttra Mimansa and (6) Purva Mimansa.

1. Sankhya Shastra. This system was founded by *Kapila*. This rishi ignores the existence of God and holds that matter and soul are the only two eternal things. They have great affinity for each other and it is through their combination that creation is possible.

2. Yoga Shastra. This system was founded by *Patanjali*. This rishi believes in the existence of God. This shastra treats of methods by which the soul can be united with God.

3. Nyaya Shastra. This system was founded by *Gautama* (not Gautama Buddha, but some other *rishi*). This system treats of Hindu Logic.

4. Vaisheshak Shastra. This system was founded by *Kanada*. This rishi, too, ignores the existence of God and lays down that the world is made up of atoms. These atoms, according to him, are eternal and unite with each other. Thus the earth was made by the combination of dust atoms and seas and oceans by the combination of water atoms.

5. Purva Mimansa: This system was founded by *Jaimini*. This rishi lays down that the Vedas are revealed books and he treats of rituals (*Karmakanda*) which he believes to be essential for the attainment of *mukti*.

6. Uttra Mimansa or Vedanta. This system was founded by *Vyasa*. It is also called Vedanta. Here God is regarded as the sole reality and the source of all existence. According to this system everything in the world is a manifestation of God, has come out of Him and will finally be merged in Him.

*Note.*—All these founders of systems believed in the Vedas, the doctrine of Karma and transmigration. They all regard *moksha* or *mukti* as the goal of life. With the exception of *Kapila* and *Kanada*, they all believe in the existence of God.

**Manu Smriti.** Manu was the first and greatest law-giver of the Hindus. He laid down in a book called *Manu Smriti*, a set of rules and regulations for the guidance of the Hindus. This book deals with laws of inheritance, duties of kings and subjects, duties of the four castes and the

four *ashrams*. European scholars believe that this book was composed in second century A. D. but the Hindus regard it as a much earlier production.

**The Puranas.** The word *Purana* means 'old'. They are the old books of the Hindus and describe the origin of the world, the brave deeds of the gods and the historical events of the ancient times. They are a valuable source of the ancient Hindu history, although some of their stories are too strange to be believed. The *Puranas* are eighteen in number, the most important being the *Bhagwat* and *Vishnu Purana*. The former describes the life story of Shri Krishna. Most scholars are of the opinion that the *Puranas* in their present form were composed in the Gupta period.

---

### CHAPTER III

### THE EPIC PERIOD

**Q.** What do you mean by the Epic Age? Write a short note on the Epics.

**The Epic Age.** By the Epic Age we mean that period when the events described in the *Ramayana* and the *Mahabharata* took place. The Aryans had by then settled in the valleys of the Ganges and the Jumna.

**Epics.** The word Epic means a poem celebrating the achievements of one or more heroes. The Hindu Epics are two in number, the *Ramayana* and the *Mahabharata*. These books describe battles which took place in ancient times.

The *Ramayana* was written by the sage *Valmiki*, and describes the life and deeds of Ram Chandra of the Solar dynasty of Ayodhya. It is written in Sanskrit. But during the reign of Akbar, Goswami Tulsi Dass wrote his famous *Ram Charit Manas* generally called *Tulsi Ramayana* in Hindi. The latter is a very popular book.

The *Mahabharata* was written by the sage Ved Vyasa and describes the war between the Kauravas and the Pandavas. It is the longest poem in the world.



It is difficult to say for certain when these books were written nor can we be certain that they are in their original form *i. e.*, as their authors wrote them. This much, however, is certain that the Ramayana was written before the Mahabharata, since the latter book includes the whole story of the former but the former does not mention any of the characters mentioned in the latter. According to the Hindus, the Mahabharata war was fought about 3000 B. C. But the European scholars differ from them. They are of opinion that it was fought about 1500 B. C.

**Q.** Briefly describe the stories of the Ramayana and the Mahabharata.

**Story of the Ramayana.** In olden times there flourished in Northern India a kingdom called Kosala with its capital at Ayodhya. It was ruled by Raja Dashratha of the Solar dynasty. Dashratha had three queens—Kaushalya, Kaikeyi and Sumitra. These queens bore him four sons. Rama, the eldest of them all, whose deeds are celebrated in the Ramayana was the son of Kaushalya; Lakshmana and Shatrughana were the sons of Sumitra and Bharata was the son of Kaikeyi.

Rama was married to Sita, the beautiful daughter of Raja Janaka of Videha or Northern Bihar. When Raja Dashratha grew old he proposed to nominate Rama as his successor. At this Kaikeyi, the step-mother of Rama, was beside herself with rage and envy. She wanted to have the throne for her own son Bharata. Fortunately for her, the raja had once given her word that he would grant any two requests of hers whenever she so desired. Jealous Kaikeyi now reminded the raja of those promises and persuaded him to send Ram into exile for fourteen years and settle the throne on her son Bharata. Rama like an obedient son got ready to retire to forests. His wife Sita an ideal wife that she was and his brother Lakshmana also accompanied him. They all went to the *Dandak* forest at the foot of the Vindhya. Raja Dashratha unable to bear the pangs of separation died.

Bharata in those days was staying with his maternal uncle. When he came back to Ayodhya and heard of what had

happened he got very angry with his mother. He refused to accept the throne and at once went to Rama with his ministers and requested him in all earnestness to come back and occupy the throne. Rama, however, refused to do so. Then Bharat brought his sandals to Ayodhya, placed them on the throne and began to carry on the work of government in the name of Rama.

Rama spent the first thirteen years of exile without much adventure but during the fourteenth year Ravana, the king of Ceylon, carried off Sita from *Panchvati* in the *Dandak* forest. With the help of Sugriva, the king of Kishkindha, and his commander, Hanumana, Rama invaded Ceylon to recover Sita. Ravana was killed in the battle and Sita was rescued. Rama offered the throne of Ceylon to Vibhishan, the younger brother of Ravana, who had come over to the side of Rama. In due course Rama, Lakshmana and Sita returned to Ayodhya. People welcomed them with great joy and enthusiasm. Now Rama began to rule over the country and he ruled so wisely and justly that people still remember his rule as a golden age.

**Story of the Mahabharata.** In olden times there flourished a kingdom named Hastinapur about sixty miles north-east of modern Delhi. It was ruled by the Lunar dynasty of the Aryans. In due course one Raja *Pandu* became its ruler. He had five sons—Yudhishtira, Bhima, Arjuna, Nakula and Sahadeva. These five brothers were called the *Pandavas*. After the death of Pandu, his elder brother Dharitrashta who was born blind began to rule with the help of his uncle Bhishma. Dharitrashta had one hundred sons of whom Duryodhan was the eldest. These brothers were called the *Kauravas*. The Kauravas and Pandavas were cousins and there existed a bitter rivalry between them. The Mahabharata is the story of the war between these cousins.

Duryodhana and his brothers persuaded their father Dharitrashta to send the Pandva brothers into exile. During this exile the Pandvas visited the neighbouring kingdom of Panchala. There the *swayamvara* of princess Draupadi, daughter of the Raja Drupada of Panchala,

was being celebrated. Arjuna won the archery contest—the condition of the *swaymvara*, and was married to Draupadi.

This matrimonial alliance with the Panchala ruler strengthened the power of the Pandvas and now they demanded half the kingdom from the Kaurvas. The Kaurvas gave them the barren and unproductive part of their kingdom. The Pandvas cleared this part of the country, founded there a new town named *Indraprastha* and soon made a marvellous progress. This made the Kauravas jealous of them.

Duryodhana who was always on the look out to ruin them persuaded Yudhishtira to gamble with him. In this gambling contest Yudhishtira lost his kingdom and even Draupadi. According to one of the conditions the Pandavas had to retire to forests for 13 years. After the lapse of this period the Pandavas came back and claimed their kingdom. Duryodhana refused to give them even an inch of land. This refusal led to the great war between the Kauravas and the Pandavas. The two armies met at the field of Kurukshetra. Almost all the kings of India sided with one party or the other. Sri Krishna the Yadav raja of Dwarka, was on the side of the Pandavas. The battle raged for eighteen days. In the end the Pandavas came out victorious and the Kauravas were all killed. The victory was due mainly to the policy of Krishna and the bravery of Arjuna. After the war Yudhishtira became the ruler and performed the *Ashvamedha Yajna* (horse-sacrifice). Some years later Yudhishtira handed over the government to Parikshit the grandson of Arjuna and himself repaired to the Himalayas along with his five brothers and Draupadi. In course of time they all died there.

Q. Write a short note on Lord Krishna and the Bhagwad Gita.

Sri Krishna. Sri Krishna was a great Hindu philosopher, and a *Karm-yogi* in the Epic period of Indian history. He was a prince of the Yadava tribe and was born at Mathura. He performed many brave deeds and afterwards became the ruler of Dwarka in Gujarat Kathiawar. In the great war of the Mahabharata he acted as Arjuna's

charioteer. The success of Pandavas in that war was mostly due to his policy and guidance. Most Hindus regard him as an incarnation (Avatar) of God.

**The Bhagwad Gita.** Bhagwad Gita means the Lord's song. It is a part of the Mahabharata and contains the valuable advice which Sri Krishna gave to Arjuna when the latter refused to take part in the war saying that he had not the heart to fight against his own kith and kin. The gist of the advice is that *the soul is immortal, it is the body alone that dies. A man should do his duty regardless of consequences and without attachment or repulsion.* The popularity of the Gita is evident from the fact that it has been translated into almost every well-known language of the world.

**Q.** What light do the Ramayana and the Mahabharata throw on the religious, social and political life of the ancient Hindus? [P. U. 1917-24-30-35]

Or,

**Describe the historical importance of the Epics. (Important)**

The Ramayana and the Mahabharata throw a flood of light on the civilization of the Epic age. We learn from them that when the Aryans had advanced from the Punjab into the valleys of the Ganges and the Jumna many changes had come over their civilization.

**1. Religious condition.** Now religion was not so simple as it was during the Vedic period. In the first place *nature worship was replaced by the worship of many gods and goddesses.* The chief gods were the triumvirate—Vishnu, Shiva and Brahma. Secondly *religious ceremonies had become so complicated that only learned purohits could perform them.* For this reason the priestly class rose in importance. As in the Vedic period the people believed in Karma and the Transmigration of Soul.

**2. Social condition.** The caste system became more defined and rigid, and the Brahmanas were held in high esteem. The span of life was divided into four stages called *ashramas*. Women enjoyed great freedom and received education. There was no *purdah*. The girls of good families

chose their husbands. This custom was called *Swaymvara*. People lived mostly in villages but many big cities like Ayodhia, Mithila, Indraprastha, Hastinapur, Mathura etc. also flourished.

3. **Political condition.** *The tribes of the Vedic period were replaced by powerful Kingdoms.* The Ramayana and the Mahabharata mention many kingdoms, e.g., Panchala, Kaushala, Videha, Magadha, Kashi, Anga, etc. There were also many small republics. *Kingship became hereditary* that is, the rajas were not elected as in the Vedic period, but the eldest son succeeded his father. *The rajas increased their own power and influence* and the importance of the *sabha* and the *samiti* declined. Still at the time of coronation, the raja had to take an oath that he would look after the welfare of the country and his subjects and would abide by the law of the land. A wicked king or one who failed to do his duty could be deposed. The chief source of Government income was the land revenue which was one-sixth of the produce and was usually paid in kind. There were several other taxes. A regular army was maintained consisting of cavalry, infantry, chariots and elephants.

## CHAPTER IV

### THE CASTE SYSTEM

**Q.** What do you know about the Caste system of the Hindus? Discuss its merits and demerits. [1922-26]

**The meaning of Caste.** From early times Hindu society has been divided into various groups and each group is cut off from the rest as regards marriage and in some provinces in other respects too. Such groups are called castes. In the beginning this division was based on occupations and it was not difficult to change one's caste, but in course of time caste became hereditary, that is, it was based on birth, and it became impossible to go from one caste to another. Modern conditions and spread of education, however, are weakening the rigours of the caste system. Several societies are in the field to break up this custom and they have succeeded to a remarkable extent.

**Origin of the Caste system.** It cannot be said for certain when and in what circumstances the caste system began. It is generally believed that in the Vedic period, *i.e.*, when the Aryans lived in the Punjab there were no castes among them. Only the fair-skinned invaders called themselves *Aryans* and they called the dark-skinned aborigines *Dasyus*. But afterwards when the Aryans advanced into the Gangetic valley, (*i.e.*, in the Epic Period), caste divisions set in. The reason was that as the Aryans extended their conquests and established many kingdoms, it was difficult for one man to perform all the duties, *viz.*, to perform *yajna*, to fight and to carry on trade or agriculture. Thus different duties were entrusted to different groups and the Aryans were split up into the following four groups according to occupations:—

1. **Brahmanas** or the Priestly class. Their occupation was to acquire as well as to impart education and to perform as well as to officiate at *yajnas*. They were held in high respect. The ministers of *rajas* were generally Brahmanas.

2. **Kshatriyas** or the Military class. Their occupation was to fight and defend the country. The *rajas* generally belonged to this class.

3. **Vaishyas** or the Trading class. These people were engaged in trade and agriculture.

4. **Sudras** or the Labouring class. This caste consisted of the low class people, *i.e.*, degraded Aryans and the aborigines who were not admitted into any of the first three castes. They had to serve other castes.

*Note.*—The first three castes are called higher castes. They were all required to receive education. This education gave them, so to say, a new birth, hence they were called *dvijas* (twice born).

**Increase in the number of Castes.** In course of time the number of castes gradually increased, so much so that at present there are about 3,000 castes. There are several reasons for this increase in the number of castes, *e.g.*—

1. The original inhabitants of India formed separate castes when they adopted Hinduism, *e.g.*, the *Gonds* of Central India and the *Rajvanshis* of Bengal.

chose their husbands. This custom was called *Swaymvara*. People lived mostly in villages but many big cities like Ayodhya, Mithila, Indraprastha, Hastinapur, Mathura etc. also flourished.

3. Political condition. *The tribes of the Vedic period were replaced by powerful Kingdoms.* The Ramayana and the Mahabharata mention many kingdoms, e.g., Panchala, Kaushala, Videha, Magadha, Kashi, Anga, etc. There were also many small republics. *Kingship became hereditary* that is, the rajas were not elected as in the Vedic period, but the eldest son succeeded his father. *The rajas increased their own power and influence* and the importance of the *sabha* and the *samiti* declined. Still at the time of coronation, the raja had to take an oath that he would look after the welfare of the country and his subjects and would abide by the law of the land. A wicked king or one who failed to do his duty could be deposed. The chief source of Government income was the land revenue which was one-sixth of the produce and was usually paid in kind. There were several other taxes. A regular army was maintained consisting of cavalry, infantry, chariots and elephants.

## CHAPTER IV

### THE CASTE SYSTEM

Q. What do you know about the Caste system of the Hindus? Discuss its merits and demerits. [1922-26]

The meaning of Caste. From early times Hindu society has been divided into various groups and *each group is cut off from the rest as regards marriage and in some provinces in other respects too.* Such groups are called castes. In the beginning this division was based on occupations and it was not difficult to change one's caste, but in course of time caste became hereditary, that is, it was based on birth, and it became impossible to go from one caste to another. Modern conditions and spread of education, however, are weakening the rigours of the caste system. Several societies are in the field to break up this custom and they have succeeded to a remarkable extent.

**Origin of the Caste system.** It cannot be said for certain when and in what circumstances the caste system began. It is generally believed that in the Vedic period, *i.e.*, when the Aryans lived in the Punjab there were no castes among them. Only the fair-skinned invaders called themselves *Aryans* and they called the dark-skinned aborigines *Dasyus*. But afterwards when the Aryans advanced into the Gangetic valley, (*i.e.*, in the Epic Period), caste divisions set in. The reason was that as the Aryans extended their conquests and established many kingdoms, it was difficult for one man to perform all the duties, *viz.*, to perform *yajna*, to fight and to carry on trade or agriculture. Thus different duties were entrusted to different groups and the Aryans were split up into the following four groups according to occupations:—

1. **Brahmanas or the Priestly class.** Their occupation was to acquire as well as to impart education and to perform as well as to officiate at *yajnas*. They were held in high respect. The ministers of rajas were generally Brahmanas.

2. **Kshatriyas or the Military class.** Their occupation was to fight and defend the country. The rajas generally belonged to this class.

3. **Vaishyas or the Trading class.** These people were engaged in trade and agriculture.

4. **Sudras or the Labouring class.** This caste consisted of the low class people, *i.e.*, degraded Aryans and the aborigines who were not admitted into any of the first three castes. They had to serve other castes.

*Note.*—The first three castes are called higher castes. They were all required to receive education. This education gave them, so to say, a new birth, hence they were called *dvijas* (twice born).

**Increase in the number of Castes.** In course of time the number of castes gradually increased, so much so that at present there are about 3,000 castes. There are several reasons for this increase in the number of castes, *e.g.*—

1. The original inhabitants of India formed separate castes when they adopted Hinduism, *e.g.*, the *Gonds* of Central India and the *Rajvaushis* of Bengal.



2. The foreign invaders, in the same way, formed separate castes, when they embraced Hinduism e. g. the *Gurjars* and the *Huns*.

3. People driven out of their castes formed separate castes.

4. People belonging to the same caste but living in different parts of the country adopted different customs and manners. Thus they stopped intermarrying or dining together, e.g. Kashmiri Brahmanas, Gujarati Brahmanas, Punjabi Brahmanas, etc

### Merits of the Caste system.

The following are the chief merits of the caste system :—

1. One of the advantages of the caste system was that everybody followed the occupation of his own forefathers, so that all arts, sciences and crafts were confined to particular castes. Thus *these arts and industries made great progress*.

2. The caste system kept up a *high standard of morality* among the people of the higher castes. They were afraid that if they did anything wrong they would be disgraced and driven out of their caste.

3. Among the members of the same caste there *grew up a feeling of deep love and sympathy* and they considered themselves as belonging to the same brotherhood. Thus the rich men helped the poor men of their caste. Within the caste all men were equal.

4. By refusing intermarriage with other castes they could keep up the *purity of blood*.

5. When occupations became hereditary a man felt *no anxiety which occupation to adopt*. His occupation was already chosen for him.

### Demerits of the Caste system.

It is true that the caste system did much good to the Hindus, at the same time it cannot be denied that it proved harmful in several ways

1. The caste system has split up the Hindu society into a number of groups which are not always friendly to each other. *This prevents the growth of a national*

*spirit.* In many cases Hindus could not make a united stand in the face of a common danger.

2. When in course of time caste became hereditary it was sometimes difficult for a man to adopt an occupation of his own choice if he was not born in the right caste. This proved a *hindrance in the development of personal abilities.*

3. The higher castes looked down upon the lower castes. This gave rise to *untouchability.*

4. The caste system has *narrowed down the circle within which a man can marry.* Several Hindus embrace other religions because they cannot get married within their own castes.

5. Some Hindus *could not go abroad* to learn sciences and arts on account of the restrictions of the caste system.

6. At the present time the caste system is harmful to the Hindu society in this way that people belonging to other religions find it difficult to embrace Hinduism. They are not admitted into any caste.

**Q. Write a short note on the Ashramas.**

**Ashramas.** During the Epic Period, human life, the average duration of which was taken at a hundred years, was divided into four stages or *ashramas*. Each ashrama had its own set of duties. These ashramas were (1) Brahmacharya (2) Grahastha (3) Banaprastha and (4) Sanayasa. Each ashrama was of twenty-five years duration.

1. **Brahmacharya Ashrama.** This ashrama lasted till the 25th year. During this period a Hindu remained celibate (*Brahmchari*) and received education. He led a simple and hard life and lived with his *guru*.

2. **Grahastha Ashrama.** This ashrama began at the age of 25 and ended at 50. During this period a Hindu lived the life of a householder and supported his wife and children by honest means.

3. **Banaprastha Ashrama.** At the age of 50 a Hindu entered this ashrama and remained here till the age of 75. He left his house and went to forests where he lived on fruits and roots and passed his time in meditation and **contemplation.**


4. **Sanayasa Ashrama.** This ashrama extended from the age of 75 to that of 100. Now a Hindu was free from religious restrictions and regulations e. g., he discarded the *shikha* and the *yojunopavit*. Sanayasis were very learned men and people went to them to hear them preach.

*Note.*—Of these *ashramas* the Hindus regard the *Grahastha ashrama* as the most important since it is on this ashrama that the other three ashramas depend for their existence.

## CHAPTER V

### BUDDHISM AND JAINISM

**Rise of Buddhism and Jainism.** When the Aryans entered India, most of their time was employed in fighting with the aborigines. But when they advanced into the Gangetic valley and established their kingdoms there, they inclined towards religion. But the Vedic religion had now degenerated. (i) *It now became a set of complicated and meaningless rituals.* (ii) *Animal sacrifices also increased and Yajnas became very costly.* (iii) *Caste system became very rigid and* (iv) *the Brahmanas rose in importance.* Many people revolted against this religion and in the sixth century B. C. a number of new sects sprang up. Only two of these sects have survived. These were founded by two Kshatriya princes, *Buddhism* by Siddhartha and *Jainism* by Vardhaman Mahavir.

 **Q.** Give a short sketch of the life of Buddha and state the chief doctrines that he preached. Also compare and contrast Buddhism and Hinduism. (V. Important)

**Gautam Buddha.** (623 B. C. to 543 B. C.)

**His Childhood.** Gautam was a Kshatriya prince and was the son of Shuddhodana, the raja of Kapilavastu in Nepal. He was born in 623 B. C. (or according to some authorities in 567 or even 553 B. C.) in Lumbini village and was named Siddhartha. Later on he came to be known as the Buddha. As he belonged to the Sakya clan, he is also called '*Sakya Muni*'.

**Marriage.** Gautam Buddha was brought up in the lap of luxury. Like other Kshatriya princes he received high education, but he was always absorbed in thought. The sight of suffering made him sad and restless. His father wanted to change this state of his mind. Accordingly, at the age of 18, he was married to *Yashodhara*, a beautiful princess. But this did not change him in any way.

**Renunciation.** On different occasions Gautam happened to see the sighs of old age, disease and death, and he realized that human life is full of misery. He now wanted to find a way by which a man could escape this misery. Ten years after his marriage he was blessed with a son, who was named *Rahula*. Now he said, "Here is another bond". He made up his mind to leave his home. So at the age of 28 he left home one night and retired to the forests. This event is known as the *Great Renunciation*.

**Becoming the Buddha.** At first Gautam went to the Brahmins to learn what they could teach him. But this did not satisfy him. Then for six years he practised severe penances in the jungles of Uruvela near Gaya so that he was reduced to a skeleton. This also proved of no avail. At last he sat down in meditation under a *bo-tree* near Gaya. Here he discovered a new light, and he thought that he had now found a way to free mankind from the miseries of human life. *It was that a man should be pure in word, deed and thought.* From this time he came to be called the *Buddha* or the enlightened one. At this time he was 35 years old.

**Preaching his religion.** Now Buddha began to preach his religion, and gave his first sermon in the Deer Park at Sarnath near Benares. Here five *sadhus* became his disciples. His followers began to increase and Buddha founded a powerful *Sangha* or order of his *Bhikshus*. These people spread his religion far and wide. Buddha spent the last 45 years of his life in preaching his religion in Magadha and the surrounding districts. His father and other members of his family embraced his religion.

**Death.** At last at the age of 80 *i. e.*, in 543 B. C. (or according to some authorities 487 or even 483 B. C.) Buddha

4. **Absence of Caste.** There was no caste among the Buddhists. All people were equal. For this reason people of low castes who were generally looked down upon in the Hindu society embraced this religion in large numbers.

5. **Hatred of Rituals.** Common people were disgusted with the cruel and bloody sacrifices and costly *yajnas* of the Hindus. For this reason Buddhism which regarded noble deeds alone as a means of salvation and laid emphasis on *ahimsa* was more popular.

6. **Activities of Bhikshus.** The *sangha* or order founded by Buddha proved a powerful means of propagating Buddhism. Bhikshus preached their religion not only all over the country but in far off lands, too.

7. **Royal Support.** The *chief reason* for the spread of Buddhism was that Maharaja Asoka the great Mauryan Emperor made it the state religion and he used all his energies in spreading it. After him Kanishka also did much to propagate it. By their efforts Buddhism spread to far off lands.

8. **Absence of Rivals.** Another reason for the spread of Buddhism was that it had not to compete with any other faith. Hinduism was not, for a long time, a missionary religion. Islam and Christianity, the two leading missionary religions, had not yet come into being.

**Causes of the decline of Buddhism.** Buddhism flourished in India for seventeen centuries, but during this period it became weaker and weaker for several reasons. At last it died out in the land of its birth. The following were the main causes of its decline :—

1. **Popularity of Hinduism.** Hinduism reformed itself according to the needs of the times. The Hindus acknowledged Buddha as an incarnation (*avatar*) of Vishnu and accepted the principle of *ahimsa*. Thus Hinduism again became popular while Buddhism became weaker and weaker and at last was completely absorbed in Hinduism.

2. **Schism (Division) in Buddhism.** In course of time Buddhism was split up into two sects, Mahayana and Hinayana. The Mahayana form very much resembled

Hinduism and at last got merged in the latter in this country, though it still flourishes in Tibet, China and Japan.

3. **Withdrawal of Royal Support.** After the death of Kanishka, the royal support which was the chief cause of its rapid spread was withdrawn. On the other hand Hinduism began to rise under the royal support of the Gupta rulers.

4. **Complicated doctrines.** The Buddhists accepted many Hindu doctrines which made their religion intricate and full of ceremonies or rituals.

5. **Sanskrit Language.** Even during the reign of Kanishka the Buddhists began to write their books in Sanskrit, which the common people found difficult to understand.

6. **Corruption among the Bhikshus.** Many evils had crept into the *Sangha* founded by Buddha. The *viharas* (monasteries) became rich and the Bhikshus became ease-loving and even wicked. They fell in the estimation of the people.

7. **Rise of the Rajputs.** Buddhism laid very great emphasis on *ahinsa*, but the Rajputs who were by nature a warlike people could not be reconciled to it. When they rose to power Buddhism naturally declined and Hinduism gained ground.

8. **Hindu Preachers.** During the 8th and 9th centuries two very able Hindu preachers, *Kumarila Bhatta* and *Shankracharya*, vigorously preached against Buddhism. Buddhism could not stand this onslaught (attack) and was gradually merged in Hinduism.

9. **Muslim Invasions.** In the eleventh and twelfth centuries the Muslim invasions still further weakened Buddhism and at last this religion was almost wiped out of India.

**Note :—**Although Buddhism has been wiped out of India, still it claims 1/4 of the human race i. e., about 500,000,000 people as its followers. It is still prevalent in Tibet, China, Mongolia, Siam, Japan, Ceylon, Nepal, Burma and Indo-China.

**Q. Write a short note on the career and teachings of**

**Mahavira.** Also draw a comparison between Jainism and Buddhism.

**Vardhaman Mahavir.** Vardhaman Mahavira was the founder \*of Jainism and came of a royal family of Bihar. He was born about 599 B. C. and was for some time a contemporary of Buddha. His early life was spent like that of Gautam. At the age of thirty he left his home after the death of his parents and joined the sect of Sadhus founded by *Parshvanath* the twenty third Tirthankar. But he got no satisfaction. He left this sect and passed the next twelve years in severe penances. At last true light dawned upon him and he came to be called *Mahavir* or the Great Hero and *Jin* or the Conqueror. He was then 42 years old. Now he reorganised the sect of Parshvanath and named it Jainism. During the last thirty years of his life Mahavira went about preaching in Magadha and the surrounding territories. He was connected with many royal families and this helped him a great deal in spreading his religion. Still his religion was never as popular as Buddhism and it did not spread outside India. Mahavira died at the age of 72 at Pawa (District Patna) in 527 B. C. At the time of his death he had nearly 14,000 followers.

**Teachings of Jainism.** The teachings of Jainism are very similar to those of Buddhism.

1. The Jainis believe that *the object of human life is to attain nirvana* which can be achieved by following these three principles :—

- (a) *Right Faith*
- (b) *Right Knowledge*
- (c) *Right Conduct.*

They are called the '*three jewels*'.

2. The most important doctrine of Jainism is that of *Ahinsa* i. e., non-injury to living beings. The Jainis have carried this principle to such extremes that they regard it

---

\*According to Jain tradition there have been as many as twenty-four *tirthankaras* or saints who taught this religion. The first was Rishabhadeva and the last was Vardhaman. The twenty-third tirthankar was Parshvanath. He lived about 250 years before Vardhaman.

a sin to injure even small insects. This is the reason why some Jainis walk about barefoot and tie a piece of cloth round their mouths so that they should not inhale the small insects in the air. They even strain water before drinking.

3. The Jainis deny the existence of a Creator or ruler of the universe but they believe that everything has a soul.

4. Like the Buddhists the Jainis do not believe in the *yajnas* or sacrifices, and gods and goddesses, nor do they acknowledge the authority of the Vedas.

5. Like the Hindus and Buddhists the Jainis believe in Karma and Transmigration of Soul.

6. The Jainis worship their 24 *Tirthankaras*.

7. The Jainis regard penances and even death by starvation as great virtues.

**JAIN SECTS.** About two hundred years after the death of Mahavira Jainism was split up into two sects.

1. **SHWETAMBARA.** These people wear white clothes and clothe their idols in white.

2. **DIGAMBARA.** These people worship naked idols and their sadhus remain naked.

*Note.*—The Jainis in India are about twelve lakhs in number. These people are generally rich and prosperous and are chiefly engaged in trade. They have their magnificent temples at Mt. Abu. They mostly live in Malwa, Rajputana and Gujarat Kathiawar.

### **Comparison of Jainism with Buddhism.**

In some respects Jainism and Buddhism resemble each other and in other respects they differ.

#### **Points of resemblance.**

1. Both these religions came into being as a protest against the *yajnas* and sacrifices of the Hindus and both of them preach *ahinsa*.

2. Both refuse to acknowledge the authority of the Vedas.

3. Both reject the caste system.

4. Both believe in *Karma* and Transmigration of Soul.



5. In the beginning both laid emphasis on conduct and not on abstruse (hard to understand) doctrines.

6. Both preached in the language of the common people and not in Sanskrit.

7. Both regard the world as evil and regard *nirvana* as the goal of life.

8. Both are in favour of the formation of the orders of monks and nuns.

### Points of difference.

1. Both worship their respective saints. The Buddhists worship their *Buddhas* and the Jainis their *Tirthankaras*.

2. Their scriptures are different.

3. The Buddhists seek to attain *nirvana* by the eight-fold path and the Jainis by their 'three jewels'.

4. The Buddhists are *silent* about the existence of God but the Jainis *deny* a Creator.

5. The Buddhists are opposed to severe penances but the Jainis advocate them. They regard it a merit to die by starvation.

6. The Buddhists believe that only living things have souls but the Jainis think that everything whether living or non-living has a soul.

7. Though both these sects believe in *ahimsa*, yet the Jainis lay a much greater emphasis on it than the Buddhists.


---

## CHAPTER VI

### ALEXANDER'S INVASION

**Alexander the Great.** Alexander was the son of Philip, King of Macedonia (Greece). He was brave and valiant and was one of the greatest conquerors the world has ever seen. He was born in 356 B. C. The famous Greek philosopher Aristotle was his tutor. Even in his early years, he made it his object in life to conquer the whole world. He succeeded to the throne at the age of twenty and in a very short time conquered the whole territory from Asia Minor

to Afghanistan. In 326 B. C. he invaded India. He was the first European invader on the Indian soil.

 Q. Describe the political condition of India at the time of Alexander's invasion. Give a brief account of his campaign in the Punjab and state its effects.

(V. Important)

[P. U. 1913-17-19-21-26-28-37-42]

**The Political condition of India at the time of Alexander's Invasion.** Alexander invaded India in 326 B. C. At that time the most powerful kingdom in northern India was that of *Magadha* extending east of the Sutlej and covering the whole of the Gangetic valley. It was ruled by the Nanda dynasty and its capital was Pataliputra, (modern Patna). The Nanda ruler had a large and powerful army.

The *Punjab* at that time, was divided into many small chiefships and independent tribes which were jealous of each other. The more important of these were the following :—

(i) The Kingdom of Taxila \*situated between the Indus and the Jhelum. Its ruler Ambhi was an enemy of his neighbouring prince Porus, and had made an offer of help to Alexander even before the latter had crossed the Indus.

(ii) The Kingdom of Porus situated between the Jhelum and the Chenab. Porus offered stubborn resistance to Alexander.

(ii) The territory between the Chenab and the Ravi was ruled by the Younger Porus who was a nephew of king Porus.

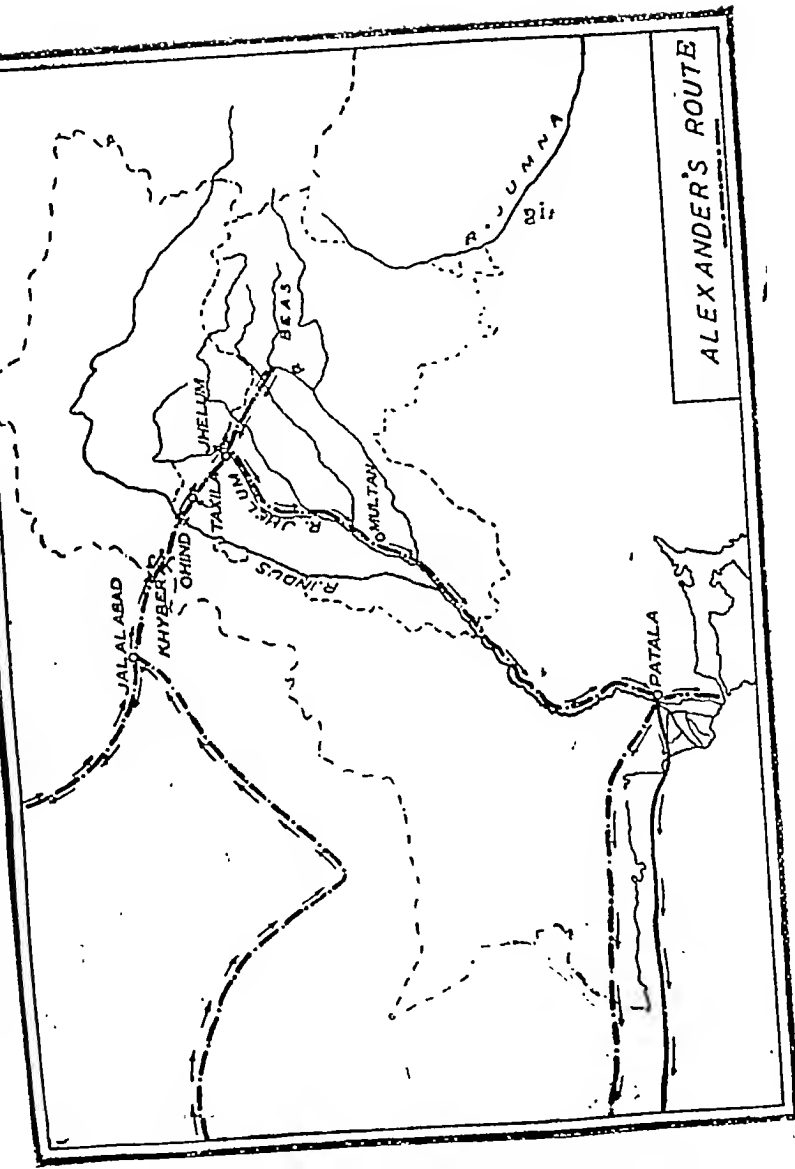
(iv) Several independent tribes ruled beyond the Ravi. The chief of these tribes was the Kathaioi. Their capital was Sangala situated somewhere in the modern Gurdaspur district.

(v) In the south-western Punjab there dwelt many powerful tribes the chief among them being the Sibis, Kshudrakas and the Mallois. The last were a fierce and warlike people and occupied the territory round about Multan which city is named after them. They possessed a large army.

---

\*Taxila in those days was the seat of a great University and a flourishing commercial city.

ALEXANDER'S ROUTE



As all these states were often at war with one another, they could not make a united stand against Alexander.

**Alexander's Invasion, 326 B. C.** Ambhi, king of Taxila had already offered his submission to Alexander because he wanted his help against his enemy Porus. In 326 B. C. Alexander crossed the river Indus at Ohind (about sixteen miles above modern Attock) by means of a bridge of boats and advanced towards Taxila. Ambhi welcomed the invader and helped him with men and provisions. After staying for a few days at Taxila and refreshing his army there, Alexander advanced forward and sent word to Porus, the ruler of the territory between the Jhelum and the Chenab, to make his submission. Porus, however, refused to submit and arrayed his army on the eastern bank of the Jhelum to fight with Alexander.

**Battle with Porus.** The river Jhelum was in flood and the army of Porus was ready on the opposite bank to meet the invader. It was, therefore difficult to cross the river. But one dark stormy night when it was raining heavily, Alexander marched a few miles up the river and under cover of darkness crossed it where its bed was narrow. Porus sent a small force under his son to check their landing, but this army was routed and the son of Porus was killed. In the meanwhile Alexander's remaining army crossed the Jhelum and fell upon the army of Porus all of a sudden. There was a stubborn battle at the plain of Karri. The Indians fought gallantly but Alexander was victorious. Porus who was a great warrior, proud and majestic, six and a half feet tall, kept fighting to the last, was wounded and taken prisoner. Alexander asked him, "How shall I treat you?" Porus very bravely replied, "*As Kings treat Kings.*" Alexander was pleased with this bold answer and gave back his territory to him. Alexander is said to have founded two cities on the site of the battle to commemorate this victory.

#### **Causes of defeat of the Indians.**

1. The main reason of Alexander's victory was that he was a *skilled general* and his army was well up in the tactics of war.
2. On account of the rains, the *battlefield was slippery*. The

archers of Porus could not find a firm footing for their long bows. Moreover the chariots of Porus got stuck in the mud.

3. The elephants of Porus maddened by their wound caused by the arrows of the Greek archers, ran away recklessly and *trampled their own army*.

**Advance up to the Beas.** After his fight with Porus Alexander advanced forward and crossing the Chenab entered the territory of the younger Porus who fled before him. Alexander now crossed the Ravi. Here he met with a stout resistance from the Kathaiois of Sangala but he was able to defeat them and their town was razed to the ground. Several other tribes submitted to him without opposition and Alexander now reached the Beas. Here his army refused to proceed further. One reason for this was that the soldiers were now tired and were homesick. But the *probable* reason seems to be that they were struck with terror when they heard of the vast army of the Nanda king of Magadha. Alexander made a stirring and indignant appeal but to no avail. The Macedonian army absolutely refused to go a step further. Alexander reluctantly gave orders for retreat. He, however, got twelve gigantic stone altars built on the bank of the Beas to mark the eastern limits of his territory. No trace of these altars is to be found now.

**Alexander's Retreat.** Alexander retreated the way he had advanced and reached the Jhelum. Here he got a fleet of about 2,000 boats built and the main portion of the army sailed down the river. Two divisions of the Greek army marched down either bank. Before starting on his return voyage he put Ambhi in charge of the territory between the Indus and the Jhelum and Porus in charge of the territory between the Jhelum and the Beas. He also left some Greek forces here. On his way back he had to fight several tribes. The Malois or the Malis, who inhabited the territory round about Multan, gave him much trouble, but he defeated all the tribes and reached Patala near the modern city of Hyderabad Sind.

Here he made two divisions of his army. One division set out under *Nearchus* by sea and sailed along the coast from the mouth of the Indus to the Persian Gulf. The other

division he led himself through Baluchistan and reached Babylon. He was not destined to reach home alive. He died at Babylon (on the Euphrates in Iraq) in 323 B. C. at the age of 33.

**The Effect of the Invasion.** *There was no immediate effect of the invasion of Alexander on the civilization of India, because :*

1. Alexander went back from the Punjab and could not reach the interior of India. *His invasion was like a raid on the frontier.* No book written in India mentions this invasion.

2. Alexander stayed here for 19 months only and *all this time he was busy fighting.* As soon as he turned his back, there was a rebellion in the Punjab and the Greek armies stationed here were massacred.

3. Even at that time India was *rich in philosophy.* It never occurred to the Indians that Greek civilization had anything new to teach them.

**The direct results of Alexander's invasion were the following :—**

1. The independent states in the Punjab and Sind became so weak that it was quite easy for Chandragupta Maurya to absorb them all in his empire.

2. Some new routes were opened up between India and Europe and these routes strengthened the commercial relations between these countries.

3. Many Greek scholars who accompanied Alexander wrote books describing their experiences in India. Much of this material is available today and throws some light on the history of those days.

**The invasion of Alexander had several indirect results.**

After the death of Alexander several Greek states were established on the north-west frontier of India. Thus the Indians and the Greeks came in contact with each other, and both learned from and taught each other much.

The Indians learnt a great deal from the Greeks about *architecture and sculpture.* The buildings erected during

the reign of Kanishka show clear traces of Greek influence. Besides this the Indian artisans learnt how to make good *coins*. It is also admitted that the Indians owe something to the Greeks as regards the science of *astronomy*. But this much is certain that the Greek *religion* did not in any way influence the Hindu religion, on the other hand Hinduism did influence the Greeks. Many of them adopted Hindu names and religion. Some historians think that the Hindu *drama* was also influenced by the Greeks but it is doubtful.

## CHAPTER VIII

### THE MAURYA DYNASTY

#### 322 B. C. - 185 B. C.

The Maurya dynasty is the first dynasty in India that established a powerful empire. The founder of this dynasty was Chandragupta who probably named his dynasty Maurya after his mother Mura. Chandragupta was a powerful monarch, but his grandson Asoka is considered to be the greatest king of this dynasty. He did much to spread Buddhism.

**EX-Q** Describe the career and rise to power of Chandragupta Maurya. What are the original sources from which our knowledge of his reign is derived?

(Important) [P. U. 1939]

Chandragupta Maurya, 322 B. C. - 298 B. C. Chandragupta was the founder of the Maurya dynasty. He belonged to the Nanda dynasty of Magadha, but his mother Mura was a low caste woman. During the reign of the last Nanda ruler Chandragupta occupied a high military rank, but for some reason he incurred the displeasure of the Nanda ruler and had to flee for his life. During his exile he came to the Punjab and is said to have met Alexander at Taxila and induced him to invade Magadha. But by his arrogance he gave offence to Alexander, too, who ordered him

to be put to death. But Chandragupta managed to escape from his camp.

After the return and death of Alexander there was a violent revolt against the Greek rule in the Punjab. Chandragupta made full use of this revolt. With the help of his wise tutor and minister *Chanakya* he raised a powerful army, defeated the Greek soldiers stationed in the Punjab and occupied this province. Some time after he attacked Magadha, deposed the last king of the Nanda dynasty and became king himself. After the name of his mother he called his dynasty Maurya. In course of time he conquered all the states in Northern India and founded a powerful empire.

**The Invasion of Seleucus Nikator, 305 B. C.—** Seleucus Nikator was a general of Alexander and after his master's death he captured the Asiatic provinces of his empire extending as far as the Indus. After strengthening his position he determined to win back the Indian possessions of Alexander. Accordingly in 305 B. C. he crossed the Indus and invaded India. Chandragupta, however, defeated him and he came to terms with him. Seleucus surrendered the territory of modern Baluchistan and Afghanistan upto Hindukush to Chandragupta. He also gave his daughter in marriage to him. Chandragupta presented Seleucus with 500 war elephants. Seleucus also sent an ambassador named *Megasthenes* to Chandragupta's court at Pataliputra.

**Extent of Empire.** Chandragupta's empire extended from Bengal to Hindu Kush and from the Himalayas to the Narbada. It comprised modern Afghanistan, Punjab, U. P., Bihar (Magadha), Bengal and Gujarat Kathiawar.

*Note.* Some historians are of opinion that Chandragupta annexed a part of the Deccan too, but nothing definite can be said on this point.

**Chandragupta's Death.** After a reign of 24 years Chandragupta either died or abdicated. The account of his death as given in Jain books is as follows:—

During the last years of Chandragupta's reign there was a terrible famine in Northern India. Chandragupta



(1) There was a regular *Department of Irrigation* for the advancement of agriculture. There were canals and tanks. The share of the State was  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the total produce. There were several other taxes, the most important among them being the tax on goods sold. (2) There were *good roads* along which milestones were set up. These roads encouraged trade a great deal. One road called the *Royal Road* led from Pataliputra to Taxila. It had shady trees on either side and there were rest-houses and wells at frequent intervals. Another important road connected the capital with the great seaports of western India. Still another road ran from Pataliputra to Tamralipti (modern Tamluk) a port near the mouth of the Ganges. (3) The *Secret Police* was powerful and well organised. Even women were employed in this department and the king was kept informed of all that occurred in his kingdom. (4) The *Criminal Code* was terribly severe. For ordinary offences hands and feet were cut off. For a great many offences the punishment was death. Torture was used to extort confessions. Law courts were established throughout the empire and the final court of appeal was the emperor himself.

2. **Provincial Government.** The empire was divided into a number of provinces. Every province was under a viceroy who generally belonged to the royal family. The provinces were divided into districts and villages. The head of the district was called *Sthanik* and that of the village *Gop*.

3. **Pataliputra.** The capital of Magadha was Pataliputra situated near the modern city of Patna. It was a very magnificent city and was situated at the confluence of the Ganges and the Son. It was nine miles long, a mile and a half broad and had the shape of a parallelogram. It had a strong wooden wall round it which contained 64 gates and 570 towers. The city was surrounded by a broad and deep moat which was filled with water from the Son. This moat also received the sewage of the city. The royal palace was made of wood, and was of matchless beauty and magnificence. In it were beautiful parks and artificial lakes.

4. **Municipal Administration.** To manage the affairs of Pataliputra there was a committee of 30 members divided

into six boards of five members each. The duties of these boards were as follows:—

- (1) To look after arts and industries of the city.
- (2) To look after the comfort of strangers.
- (3) To register births and deaths.
- (4) To check weights and measures and to regulate trade.
- (5) To look after factories and manufactures.
- (6) To collect 10% tax on goods sold.


For such matters as sanitation, upkeep of the roads, water supply, extinguishing of fire, management of temples and ghats the whole committee was responsible. Probably other big cities had municipal committees like Pataliputra. Village affairs were managed by village *panchayats*.

**5. Military Administration.** The military administration was also very efficient. The army was very powerful and numbered about seven lakhs, consisting of 600,000 foot soldiers, 30,000 cavalry 9,000 elephants\*, about 8,000 chariots and a fleet. The army was paid in cash. There was a Military Department consisting of 30 members divided into six boards of five members each. These boards looked after (1) Infantry (2) Cavalry (3) Fleet (4) War. Chariots (5) War Elephants and (6) Transport.

**6. Social Life.** The people were tall, healthy, long-lived and brave. Their food was simple. They were generally truthful and trusted each other. Most transactions were oral. Witnesses and receipts were not needed. Litigation was unknown. Thefts were rare. Houses were generally left unguarded. Women were chaste. The custom of Sati prevailed among the Kashatriyas but it was voluntary. The people were prosperous. They celebrated their festivals with great *clat* and dressed themselves in showy garments. Hindu society was divided into seven classes (1) Philosophers or scholars (2) Counsellors (3) Soldiers (4) Agriculturists (5) Secret Police (6) Traders and artisans (7) Shepherds and hunters.


---

\*An elephant carried one *Mahaut* and three-archers and a chariot one driver and two soldiers.

 Q Write short notes on:—(a) Megasthenes (b) Chanakya.

(a) **Megasthenes** was a Greek ambassador sent by Seleucus to the court of Chandragupta Maurya. He lived in Pataliputra probably for five years (302 B. C.—298 B. C.) and wrote an account of the reign of Chandragupta. Unfortunately the original book (*Indica*) that he wrote has been lost, but numerous extracts from it are found in other Greek books from which we learn a great deal about those times.

(b) **Chanakya** was the tutor and minister of Chandragupta Maurya. He was a Brahman of Taxila and was a practical statesman of high abilities. He served Chandragupta very faithfully. He is known by two other names *viz.*, *Kautilya* and *Vishnugupta*. King Nanda once insulted him. He, therefore, took a vow to revenge himself on him. Chandragupta captured the Punjab with his help, and then became king of Magadha by deposing Nanda. Chanakya was rather ugly but he was a man of firm resolution and a skilful intriguer. He could afford to live in luxury but he chose to live like a poor man. He lived in a mud hut near the king's palace. He was a past master in the art of government and wrote a book on politics entitled the *Arthashastra* which tells us about the reign of Chandragupta Maurya. In fact Chandragupta owes his greatness largely to him.

 Give a brief account of the reign of Asoka and describe the measures adopted by him for the spread of Buddhism. (V. Important) [P. U. 1918-2)-22-33-37-41]



1. **Buddhism the state religion.** Asoka made Buddhism the state religion. The subjects were, thereby, induced to embrace this religion.

2. **Inscriptions.** Asoka got the principles of Buddhism inscribed on rocks and pillars. These pillars were erected on highways throughout his kingdom so that the people who used those highways might be able to read them.

3. **Appointment of Mahamatras.** Asoka appointed officers whose duty it was to preach Buddhism among the people and look after their morals. These officers were called censors or *Dharma Mahamatras*.

4. **His personal example.** Asoka set an example himself. In order to emphasise *ahimsa* he stopped warfare, abolished the department of the royal hunt, and discontinued the killing of animals for the royal kitchen.

5. **Pilgrimage to the holy places.** After the Kalinga war Asoka became a Bhikshu (monk) for some time and accompanied by his preceptor Upagupta the greatest Buddhist saint of that time visited the places of Buddhist pilgrimage. All the way he preached Buddhism. He started from Pataliputra and visited *Lumbini garden* (where Buddha was born), *Kapilvastu* (where Buddha passed his childhood), *Gaya* (where he received enlightenment), *Sarnath* (where he delivered his first sermon), *Sravasti* (where he spent most of his life) and *Kushinagar* (where he died). At all these places he erected monuments.

6. **Viharas.** (Monasteries). Asoka erected *viharas* throughout his empire for the Bhikshus and Bhikshunis. The *viharas* proved an effective means of spreading Buddhism.

7. **Buddhist Council.** Differences had arisen among the Buddhists about the teachings of Buddha. Asoka convened a council of Buddhist scholars to settle these differences. This Buddhist council, the third\* of its kind,

---

was attended by about 1,000 Buddhists.

**8. Foreign Missions.** <sup>Preachers</sup> Asoka sent preachers to foreign countries. They preached Buddhism in Burma, Nepal, Ceylon, Egypt, Syria and Macedonia. Asoka's son (or, according to some historians, his brother) Mahindra and his daughter (or, sister) Sanghamitra preached Buddhism in Ceylon. The king of that country embraced Buddhism which has since been the prevailing religion in that island. Through the efforts of Asoka Buddhism spread in the three known continents of Asia, Europe and Africa.

**Asoka's Buildings.** Asoka was a great builder. He built many *stupas, pillars, viharas, caves, cities and palaces*. He is said to have built a large number of stupas of which those at Sanchi (in Bhopal state) and Bharhut (Central India) are the best. His pillars, too, are fine specimens of engineering and architecture. They are about 50 tons each in weight and measure about 40 to 50 feet in height. Of these pillars the one at Sarnath near Benares is the most magnificent and the four lions carved at the top of it are considered as unique in the world. Asoka also founded the town of Srinagar, the capital of Kashmir and another city in Nepal. He also got many caves built. They were cut out of hard rock. Their inside walls and roofs are so brightly polished that they shine like mirrors. Some of them are still found among hills a few miles north of Gaya. His palace at Pataliputra, the remains of which have recently been unearthed was a magnificent building. When Fabien visited India in the early years of the 5th century this palace was still standing and he could not bring himself to believe that it had been built by human hands.

**Asoka's Place in History.** Asoka is doubtlessly, one of the greatest kings in history. He was a pious ruler and worked very hard for the welfare of his subjects whom he regarded as his own children and yet he was not satisfied with his efforts. After the Kalinga war he vowed never to wage another war. He considered the conquest of Dharma the greatest conquest and set himself the task of conquering the hearts of his subjects. Not only this, even the dumb and

mute animals were not deprived of his paternal care. He opened hospitals both for men and beasts. In this respect Asoka occupies a unique position in history for no other king in ancient times ever did so much for his subjects. Asoka was very tolerant and showed due respect for other religions. In distributing charity he made no distinction between his co-religionists and others. An apostle of peace and morality Asoka was certainly one of the noblest monarchs of the world. He shone both as a ruler and a Buddhist missionary. His greatest achievement is that he made Buddhism a world wide religion. But his religious policy weakened the military spirit which hastened the decline of the Maurya dynasty.

The Maurya dynasty began to decline after the death of Asoka and at last, in 185 B. C., Brihadaratha the last Maurya king, was murdered by his own commander-in-chief Pushyamitra. Thus the dynasty came to an end.

**Q. Write a short note on the Edicts of Asoka and discuss their historical importance. (P. U. 1916-24-26-40)**

**Edicts of Asoka.** After his conversion to Buddhism Asoka issued commands for the guidance of his subjects and officers and got them inscribed on rocks and pillars. These inscriptions or edicts describe the chief events of his life, the principles of Buddhism and his own achievements. They also mention the methods he adopted for the spread of Buddhism. These edicts were set up on the high roads throughout the length and breadth of his vast empire. About forty of them have so far been discovered. From north to south they are found from the Himalayas to Mysore and east to west from the Bay of Bengal to the Arabian Sea. They were written in the local languages of the various districts so that ordinary people might understand them.

1. *Extent of Asoka's Empire.* These edicts enable us to determine the extent of Asoka's empire, for the places where these edicts have been found must have been included in his empire.

2. *His administration.* Since these edicts record the chief events of Asoka's life and his achievements we can learn a good deal about his administration and character.

3. *Propagation of Buddhism.* It is from these edicts that we have come to know the means which Asoka employed for the spread of Buddhism.

4. *Education.* These edicts could be useful only to the literate people and since they are spread over a large area they suggest that the people throughout his kingdom were literate and education was widespread. For if the majority of people were illiterate, these edicts were a useless waste of money and labour.

5. *Maurya Art.* The edicts of Asoka are inscribed on tall pillars. These pillars are made of sandstone and are exquisitely polished. They are fine specimens of Mauryan art. The upper part of these pillars called the 'capital' and consisting mostly of carved lions clearly indicates the degree of excellence Mauryan art had attained in carving and polishing.

*In short, these edicts are a valuable source of information regarding Asoka's reign.*

## CHAPTER VIII

### KUSHAN DYNASTY AND KANISHKA

Q. Who were the Kushans? When and how did they come to occupy India? Give a detailed account of their reign of Kanishka. (V. Important).

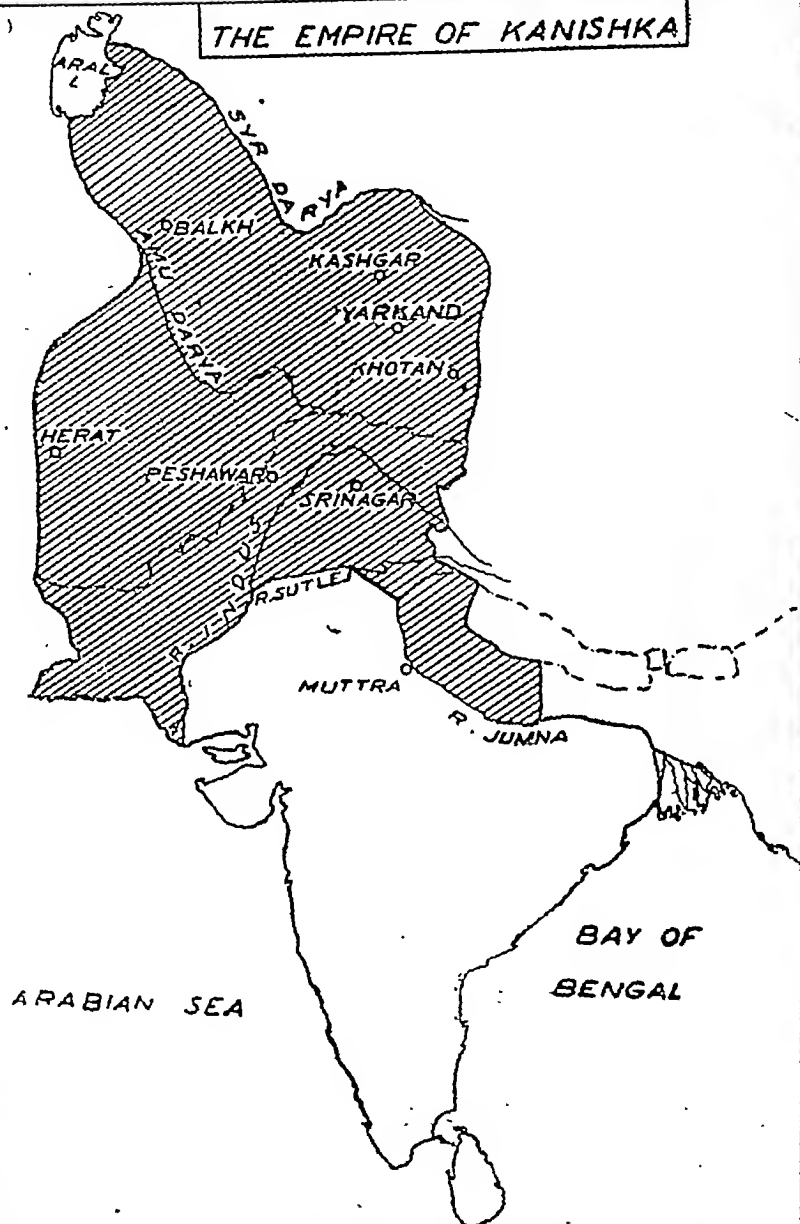
(P. U. 1920-26-28-32-36-38).

**Kushans.** About 2000 years ago a nomadic and warlike tribe called Yueh-chi inhabited Western China. In 2nd century B. C. the Chinese drove them out of their country, and they came to India by way of Bactria and Kabul. The



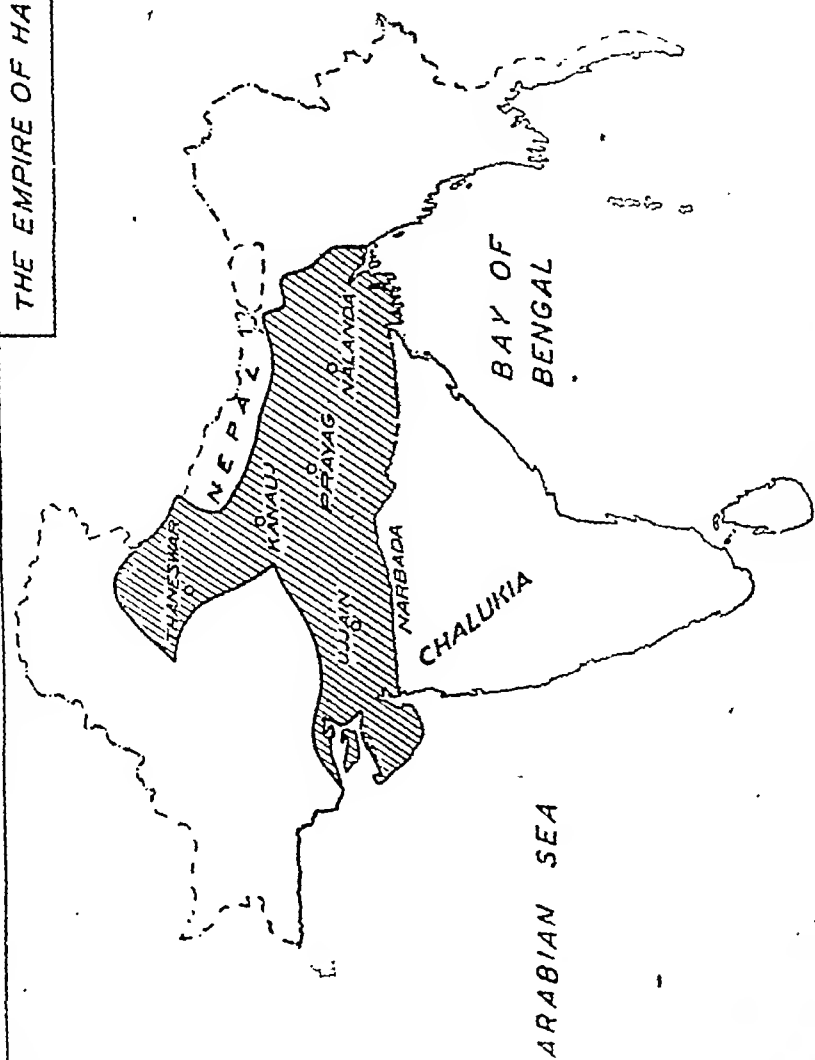


# THE EMPIRE OF KANISHKA





THE EMPIRE OF HARSHA



the conquest of Gujarat his kingdom extended as far as the Arabian Sea and several seaports came into his possession. Trade, therefore, flourished and rulers of western countries made friendly alliances with him. The country, too, became rich. Since his empire extended in the west also he made Ayodhya (and according to some historians, Ujjain) his second capital (the original capital was Pataliputra).

Some people also think that this Vikramaditya is the same Vikramaditya about whose justice and solicitude for his people so many stories are current. But about this nothing can be said for certain.

**Literature.** Chandragupta Vikramaditya was a liberal patron of literature. Sanskrit learning made great progress during his reign. Most scholars are of opinion that Kalidasa, the *Shakespeare of India*, flourished during his reign.

**Fahien.** During the reign of Chandragupta Vikramaditya, Fahien, a Chinese pilgrim came to India. His object was to visit holy places of Buddhism and to collect Buddhist sacred books. He stayed here for about six years (405 A.D. — 411 A.D.) of which he spent three years at Pataliputra where he studied Sanskrit. He came by the land route but went back by the sea route. On his return journey he visited Ceylon and Java also. He was the first Chinese pilgrim to India. His writings throw much light on the Hindu civilization of those days.


1. **Administration.** About administration Fahien says: The government interferes very little in the affairs of the people. Punishments are very mild. Ordinarily a fine is considered sufficient punishment. Capital punishment (punishing a criminal with death) is unknown. But habitual criminals have their right hand cut off. Roads are safe and travellers move about freely. Taxes are light and the major portion of government income is derived from the land revenue, which is one fourth of the produce. The country is very rich and prosperous.

2. **Religion.** About religion he says: The kings are Hindu by faith but they are tolerant. The government gives

full protection to Buddhists and Jains. There are a great many Buddhist *viharas* particularly between the Indus and Muttra. The people observe *ahinsa*.

2. Social condition. About social condition Fahien says : Indians do not kill any living being. They neither drink wine, nor eat onions or garlic. The people do not sell animals. There are no slaughter houses or wineshops. In Madyadesha the *Chandalas* live outside the city, and if they enter the city they have to give notice so that the people may not be polluted by their touch. Several rich people have founded hospitals where people are treated free.

4. Magadha. About Magadha he writes : In this country there are many big cities. People are very rich and prosperous. There are several charitable institutions. There are several *dharmshilas* along the roads for the convenience of the travellers. In Pataliputra there is a hospital where patients are given not only free medicines, but even free food and clothing. Asoka's palace in Pataliputra is still standing and is so magnificent that it does not seem to have been built by human hands.

 Q. Why is the Gupta period called the Golden Period of Hinduism? (Very Important) (P.U 1931-34-40-43)

The Golden Age. The Gupta period was doubtlessly the Golden Age of Hinduism since the progress that the Hindus made during this period in culture, political economy, learning, science and art has not been made before or since. The people were prosperous and happy and there was peace throughout the country. The following are the noteworthy features of this period :—

1. Progress of Hinduism. All Gupta kings were Hindus by faith and during this period a great many Hindu temples and idols were built. Some of the Gupta kings even revived the defunct (dead) practice of Ashvamedha. Hinduism which had for some time been eclipsed by Buddhism once again rose to power.

2 Progress of Sanskrit Literature. With the progress of Hindu faith, Sanskrit learning became popular. Several books were written in this language and it was made

the court language. Even in Buddhist *Viharas* Sanskrit began to be taught. The well-known poet and dramatist Kalidas, the Shakespeare of India, flourished in this period. He wrote several books of which *Sakuntala* is considered his masterpiece. Harishena was the court-poet of Samudragupta. Amar Singh, who adorned the court of Chandragupta II compiled Amarkosha. Moreover the Puranas, the Mahabharata and Manu Smriti assumed their present forms during this period. The Gupta period was in fact the golden age of Sanskrit learning.

3. Progress of Science. Mathematics, Astronomy and Astrology also made considerable progress in this period. Three mathematicians and astronomers of this period *viz.*, Aryabhatta, Varamihir and Brahmagupta are quite well known. Medicine and surgery also flourished.

4. Progress of Fine Arts. Architecture, sculpture, painting, music and other fine arts also attained a high degree of excellence in this period. A great many buildings of this period have perished, but those which stand to this day bear witness to the skill attained in architecture during this period. The stone temple at Deogarh (Jhansi district) and brick temple at Bhitargaon (Cawnpore district) are specimens of the Gupta architecture. The iron pillar at Mehrauli near Delhi, is one of the wonders of the world. It is a clear proof of the metallurgical (working in metal) skill of the Gupta craftsmen. The paintings of Ajanta caves (Hyderabad Deccan) and the sculptures in the temples at Ellora and Elephanta present a high standard of this art and Artists from far and near come to visit these places.

5. Progress in Education. Education was widespread during this period. There were the well-known Universities of *Nalanda*, *Taxila*, *Sarnath* and *Ajanta*. Even students from foreign countries particularly China came to these universities for higher education. (*Nalanda* University became very famous in the reign of Harsha.)

6. Colonies. During this period, the Hindus went to foreign countries and founded the colonies of Java, Sumatra, Cambodia etc. They spread Hindu culture in those countries.

7. **Progress in Trade.** Trade also flourished a great deal. Trade relations were established with Rome and the East Indies. Wealth increased and the country became rich.

**Q.** What do you know about the Huns and their invasion of India ?

**The Huns.** The Huns were a wild and fierce nomadic tribe of Central Asia. In the middle of the 5th century A. D., they invaded India but were repulsed by Skandagupta of the Gupta dynasty who was ruling at that time. A few years after this defeat they made much more determined attacks and their chief Tormana captured the Punjab, Rajputana, Sind, and Malwa after overpowering the Gupta ruler. He then assumed the title of *Maharajadhiraj*.

Tormana was succeeded by his son Mihirgul who made Sialkot his capital. Mihirgul was a cruel barbarian. There was a revolt against his atrocities and the kings of Malwa and Magadha defeated him in 528 A. D. at *Kahrur* near Multan. Mihirgul fled to Kashmir where he put the king to death and became king himself. At last he died in 540 A. D. The Hun power came to an end in India after his death.

**The Effect of the Invasion.** 1. The attacks of the Huns destroyed the Gupta power and many small states were established.

2. Many Huns embraced Hinduism. Several Rajput families are descended from the Huns.

**Q.** Write short notes on : Kalidas, Kumaril Bhatta, Shankracharya.

**Kalidas.** Kalidas was the greatest of the Sanskrit poets and dramatists. He is called the *Shakespeare of India*. Generally it is believed that he was born in Ujjain, but some Bengali scholars hold that he was born in Bengal. His writings show that he flourished in the reign of Chandragupta Vikramaditya. Probably he was his court poet. His best-known work is *Sakuntala* which still holds the first place in Sanskrit literature as regards its beauty of



diction, its purity of language and sublimity of thought. Other famous works of his are *Vikramorvashi*, *Meghaduta*, *Raghuvansha*, *Malavikagnimitra*, *Ritusamhara* etc.

**Kumarila Bhatta.** Kumarila Bhatta was a well-known preacher of Hinduism during the 8th century. He lived in Ujjain. He toured the whole country, preached Hinduism and criticised Buddhism. Through his efforts many Buddhists were reconverted to Hinduism.

**Shankracharya.** After Kumarila Bhatta came Shankracharya, another zealous preacher of Hinduism. He was born in Malabar in 788 A. D. He was a great scholar and philosopher. He preached against Buddhism and Jainism. In many debates he defeated the Buddhists so that many Buddhists were reconverted to Hinduism. He preached Vedanta and established four *mathas* for the propagation of Hinduism. (1) In the east at Jagannath Puri, (2) in the west at Dwarka, (3) in the north at Badrinath, and (4) in the south at Shringiri (Mysore). He died at Kedarnath in Kashmir at the age of 32. Through his efforts Hinduism made considerable progress.

---

## CHAPTER X

### HARSHA VARDHANA


606 A. D.—647 A. D.

The attacks of the Huns destroyed the Gupta Empire and many small kingdoms were set up in the country, which lasted about a century. One such kingdom was that of Thaneswar. During this period there was no king in India powerful enough to subdue all these kingdoms. At last in the beginning of the 7th century Harsha Vardhana, the king of Thaneswar conquered nearly the whole of Northern India and established a strong empire.

**Sources of Information.** *Harshacharita* by Bana and *Hicun Tsang's Travels* are the two chief sources of our information regarding the reign of Harsha.

1. *Harshacharita* was written by Banabhatta the court poet of Harsha. It is a biography of Harsha.

2. *Travels of Hieun Tsang*. Hieun Tsang the Chinese pilgrim wrote an account of his travels which form a valuable source of information about the reign of Harsha.

 Q. Give a short account of the reign of Harsha Vardhana, and reproduce briefly the state of India as described by Hieun Tsang (V. Important).

[P. U. 1914-18-20-24-28-38-42-43]

**Harsha Vardhana, 606—647.** *Harsha Vardhana was the last great Hindu king of Northern India.* He was the younger son of Prabhakar Vardhana the Raja of Thaneswar. In 604 Prabhakar Vardhana died a sudden death, and was succeeded by his elder son Rajya Vardhana. Soon after his accession Rajya Vardhana had to invade Malwa since the king of Malwa had put his brother-in-law (Grahavarman) the king of Kanauj to death, and had imprisoned his sister (Rajya Sri). Rajya Vardhana defeated the king of Malwa but was treacherously assassinated by (Sasank) the king of Bengal, who was a friend of the king of Malwa. Then Harsha Vardhana succeeded his elder brother to the throne in 606 A. D. He was 16 or 17 years of age at the time.

**Harsha's Conquests.** Harsha was a fine warrior and a great scholar. As soon as he came to the throne he made up his mind to avenge the death of his brother and to rescue his sister. First of all he went to the Vindhyan forests where his sister had fled after her escape from the prison. It is said that Harsha found her just at the time when she was going to burn herself as a Sati. He succeeded in dissuading her from her intention and brought her back to live with him. After this he invaded Bengal, defeated the raja and annexed the country. Then after six years of continued warfare he brought the whole of Northern India except the Punjab, Kashmir, Sind, and Rajputana under his sway. The rulers of Assam and Kathiawar also made friendly alliances with him.

In 620 A. D. Harsha invaded the Deccan but the brave king Pulikeshin II of the Chalukya dynasty who had

there was no Kshatriya left to protect the Brahmanas. Accordingly a great many Brahmans kindled a sacred fire at Mount Abu and prayed to God to produce a powerful caste to protect them. It is said that four heroes came out of this fire, who founded the four Rajput families of Parmara, Parihara, Chauhana and Chalukya. These families are called Agnikula Rajputs

**Their Organisation.** The Rajputs were split up into various clans each under a hereditary raja. There was no central government. All land was supposed to belong to the king who distributed it among his chiefs. These chiefs rendered military service to the king in return for the land granted to them.

**Their Character.** The Rajputs were very brave, and true to their word. They hated treachery and deceit and even treated their foes with great generosity. They had also a keen sense of honour. Warfare was their occupation, and they thought it an ordinary thing to lay down their lives for the honour of their clan or family. On the battlefield they never showed their backs to the enemy. Rajput women were not behind their men folk in bravery and heroism. They were noble and devotedly loyal to their husbands. In the time of trouble they showed bravery and fortitude which are unparalleled in the history of the world. To save their honour and chastity they willingly burned themselves on the pyre. This rite was called *Jauhar*.

In spite of all these good qualities Rajputs had some serious defects. They were torn with disunion, vanity and jealousy. The clans were often at war with one another. They also lacked political foresight. For these reasons they were unable to establish a vast empire and they could not make a successful stand against the Muslim invaders. They sometimes killed their female children and were addicted to opium.

**Rajput Kingdoms.** At the time of the Muslim invasion there were a great many Rajput kingdoms in India, chief of them were the following :—

1. **Delhi.** In Delhi there ruled the Tomara or Tanwar dynasty founded by Anangpal. The last king of this dynasty

was Anangpal II. He had no son, and therefore, he left the kingdom of Delhi to his daughter's son Prithvi Raj Chauhan, the king of Ajmer. In 1192, Muhammad Ghori conquered this kingdom.

2. **Ajmer.** Chauhan family ruled in Ajmer. The last and most famous king of this dynasty was *Prithvi Raj Chauhan*. He inherited the kingdom of Delhi from his maternal grandfather Anangpal II. Prithvi Raj was a powerful and brave ruler. He defeated Muhammad Ghori in 1191 at the battle of Tarain. But next year Muhammad Ghori defeated and killed Prithvi Raj. Thus Delhi and Ajmer passed into Muslim hands.

3. **Kanauj.** In Kanauj there ruled the Rathor family. The last and most famous king of this dynasty was *Jai Chand Rathor*. Prithvi Raj Chauhan had taken his daughter Sanyukta away from her *swayamvar*. This brought about enmity between Prithvi Raj and Jai Chand. It is said that Jai Chand invited Muhammad Ghori to invade Delhi. In 1194 Muhammad Ghauri defeated and killed Jai Chand and Kanauj came into Muslim possession.

4. **Bengal and Bihar.** Pala dynasty ruled in Bihar and Sena dynasty in Bengal. The kings of the Pala dynasty were followers of Buddhism. At last in the 12th century (1199 A. D.) Muhammad Bin Bakhtiar Khilji swept away both these dynasties and annexed Bengal and Bihar to the Muslim empire.

5. **Malwa.** Parmar dynasty ruled in Malwa. Its capital was Dhara. The most famous king of this dynasty was Bhoja who ruled from 1018 to 1060. Bhoja was a brave warrior and a fine scholar of Sanskrit. Sanskrit language and literature flourished during his reign. Near Bhopal he caused a big Lake to be built which is still called Bhojpur Lake.

6. **Bundelkhand.** This kingdom was situated between the Jumna and the Narbada. Kalanjar was its chief fort. Here the Chandela Rajputs ruled. In 1203 Qutb-ud-Din Aibak conquered it and annexed it to the Muslim empire.

7. **Mewar.** Sisodia dynasty which is still the ruling

Now-a-days it is all covered with forest. The decline of this kingdom began in the 13th century.

Champa. This colony of the Hindus was situated to the north of Cambodia. It was founded in the first century A.D. Its capital was Amravati. Its decline began in the 15th century. This state was a meeting place of Indian and Chinese cultures. To-day the people there are mostly Muslims.

---

# MUSLIM PERIOD

## CHAPTER I

### ISLAM AND THE CONQUEST OF SIND

**Q.** Write a short note on the life of Muhammad the Prophet, and the early rise of Islam.

**Prophet Muhammad.** Islam began in Arabia in the beginning of the 7th century. The founder of this religion was Prophet Muhammad who was born in 570 A. D. of a distinguished family of Mecca. Even in his childhood he was of a religious bent of mind. At that time the Arabs practised idol worship, and observed many undesirable customs. Muhammad was opposed to idolatry.

At the age of 40 he proclaimed himself to be the Prophet of God, and founded Islam. His teachings were: "God is one, idolatry is very bad and should be given up." Some people believed in him but the majority turned against him, so much so that in 622 A. D. he had to leave Mecca for Medina. This event is known as *Hijrat* (departure) and the Muslim era, *Hijri*, begins at this time. With the help of the Medina people, Prophet Muhammad conquered Mecca in 630 A. D. and put an end to idolatry there. He died in 632 and was buried at Medina.

**Rise of Islam.** Prophet Muhammad was succeeded by Caliphs or Khalifas. These Caliphs felt eager to spread Islam throughout the world. Arabia had accepted Islam even during the life time of the Prophet; now the Muslim began their conquests far and near and wherever they went they preached Islam. Within a hundred years of the Prophet's death Islam spread as far as Asia Minor and

It was easy enough for the Muslims to conquer them one by one.

9. *Ahinsa*. The doctrine of *ahinsa* had made the Indian masses weak and peace loving. So they could not defend themselves and fell an easy prey to the Muslims. It was for this reason that Bihar and Bengal were overrun with comparative ease.

10. *Neglect of the N. W. Frontier*. The Rajputs never attended to the defence of N. W. Frontier. They left it unguarded. So it was easy for the invaders to enter India.

11. *Muslim successes outside India*. The Muslim conquests in other parts of the world had infused courage among the Muslims. On the other hand, the defeats suffered so often by the Hindus had depressed them.

## CHAPTER IV

### THE SULTANATE OF DELHI

Or,

### THE PATHAN PERIOD

1206 A. D.—1526 A. D.

The period from 1206 to 1526 is known in Indian history as the Sultanate or the Pathan Period. During this period five dynasties ruled in Delhi.

1. The Slave dynasty	...	1206—1290
2. The Khilji dynasty	...	1290—1320
3. The Tughlak dynasty	...	1320—1414
4. The Sayyad dynasty	...	1414—1450
5. The Lodhi dynasty	...	1451—1526

*Note* :—It may, however, be noted that the name Pathan Period is a misnomer. The first three dynasties were mostly Turks and the fourth was Sayyad dynasty. The only Pathan dynasty was the Lodhi dynasty.

#### 1. THE SLAVE DYNASTY

1206—1290

This dynasty is the first Muslim dynasty of India. It was founded by Qutb-ud-Din Aibak a slave of Muhammad Ghorī. The most important sovereigns of this dynasty were : Qutb-ud-Din, Altamash, Razia, Nasir-ud-Din and Balban. This dynasty is so called *because all the rulers of this dynasty were either slaves or descendants of slaves*.

**Q.** Give a brief account of the reigns of the chief rulers of the Slave dynasty. (Important)

**Qutb-ud-Din Aibak, 1206—1210.** Qutb-ud-Din Aibak was originally a Turki slave. He was bought by the Qazi of Nishapur (in Iran) after whose death he was taken over by Muhammad Ghori. Gradually he rose to be his most trusted general on account of his soldierly abilities. He helped Muhammad Ghori in the conquest of India, so that when the latter returned to Ghazni he left Qutb-ud-Din as his viceroy. In this capacity he extended and consolidated the conquests of his master. He annexed Gujarat and Bundelkhand.

In 1206 when Muhammad Ghori died, his successor acknowledged Qutb-ud-Din as the independent king of Delhi. Thus he was the *first Muslim king in India and the founder of the Slave dynasty.*

Qutb-ud-Din was very brave, just and generous and proved a good ruler. On account of his generosity he was called *Lakh Bakhsh* or *Lakh Durr*. In order to strengthen his position he made marriage relations with powerful Muslim chiefs i.e., governors of the Punjab, Bihar, Sind, etc. Thus he was able to establish peace and order in the country. His treatment towards his Hindu subjects was also generous.

Qutb-ud-Din was also a great *builder*. He began the erection of Qutb-Mosque and Qutb Minar after the name of Khwaja Qutb-ud-Din, a Muslim saint. Both of these buildings were completed by Altamash, his successor. He also built a spacious mosque at Ajmer, known as *Adhai Din Ka Jhonpra*. In 1210 while playing *chaugan* at Lahore Qutb-ud-Din fell off his horse and died of injuries.

*Note* :—Qutb-ud-Din was succeeded by his son Aram, but he was thoroughly incompetent. Soon he was deposed by Altamash.

**Shamas-ud-Din Altamash, 1211—1236.** Altamash was a slave of Qutb-ud-Din Aibak. By sheer ability he rose to be his son-in-law. In 1211 he deposed Aram the son of Qutb-ud-Din and became king himself. At that time he was governor of Badaon. As soon as he came to the throne he had to face many difficulties. Many governors had declared



themselves independent. (1) *Taj-ud-Din Yalduz in the Punjab and Ghazni* (2) *Nasir-ud-Din Qabacha in Sindh and Multan* and (3) *the Khilji Malikis in Bengal* had risen in revolt. Besides, many *Rajput chiefs* tried to regain their lost independence. Altamash first of all brought all these Muslim chiefs under subjection. After this he turned his attention towards the Rajputs. Between 1226 to 1234 A.D. he conquered Ranthambor, Mandu, Gwalior, Malwa, Ujjain etc. Thus he established his sway over nearly the whole of northern India.

**Changez Khan.** A notable event of the reign of Altamash is that for the first time the Mongols came as far as the frontiers of India. In 1221 the Mongol chief Changez Khan, one of the mightiest conquerors the world has ever seen, reached the Indus in pursuit of an enemy Jalal-ud-Din, the king of Khwarizm. But he went away after plundering the territory to the west of the river. India was thus saved from a calamity.

Altamash got the Qutb Minar and the Qutb Mosque completed.

*Note :—*Altamash was succeeded by his son Rukn-ud-Din, but he proved incompetent and dissolute. In a few months the nobles deposed him and crowned his sister Razia.

**Razia Begum, 1236—1239.** Razia was a capable daughter of Altamash. She was the first and the only Muslim lady who ever sat on the throne of Delhi. Even during the life time of her father, she had acquired sufficient experience in state affairs, for whenever Altamash went out on distant expeditions he entrusted the task of government to Razia.

Razia was a very wise, intelligent, just and brave woman. She held her court attired in the male dress and commanded the army herself. In fact she possessed all the qualifications necessary for a king. But it was her misfortune that she was a woman, and her Pathan nobles thought it beneath their dignity to be ruled by a woman. Moreover she began to show special favours to one Jamal-ud-Din Yakut, an Abyssinian slave who was in charge of the royal stables. She even made him the commander-in-chief of the army. The

orthodox Muslims were displeased with her for her public appearance without a veil. For these reasons the governors of Lahore and Bhatinda revolted. Altunia, the rebel governor of Bhatinda took Razia prisoner when she went to put down the revolt. Meanwhile her enemies put her brother Bahram on the throne. But Razia married Altunia and with his help tried to regain the throne of Delhi. In this object she was not successful and she and her husband were both murdered in 1240.

*Note* :—Razia was succeeded, one after the other, by two kings *viz.*, Bahram, her brother and Ala-ud-Din her nephew, but both of them were deposed on account of incompetence and then Nasir-ud-Din came to the throne.

**Nasir ud-Din, 1246—1266.** Nasir-ud-Din was the son of Altamash. He was very gentle, studious and pious and on account of his simple habits is known in history as the *Darwesh King*. He did not take a single pie from the state treasury for his own use and earned his living by writing copies of the holy Koran and selling them. His wife did the whole household work. During his reign the Rajputs rose in revolt and the Mongols threatened the country. Nasir-ud-Din had entrusted all the work of the government to his minister Balban who was also his father-in-law. Balban was a very wise and capable man. He faithfully served the Sultan for twenty years. In 1266 when Nasir-ud-Din died, he succeeded him to the throne.

**Gias-ud-Din Balban, 1266—1286.** Gias-ud-Din Balban was originally a slave of Altamash, but by dint of his ability he rose to be the greatest king of the slave dynasty. His early life is rather interesting. Altamash appointed him his Personal Attendant, and under Razia he became Master of the Hunt. After this he obtained the fiefs of Hansi and Rewari. Then he became the minister of Nasir-ud-Din whom he served for twenty years. After the latter's death he became the king of Delhi. Thus both as minister and king he directed the affairs of government for about 40 years.

**Balban as Minister.** Except for a brief interval Balban was the minister of Nasir-ud-Din from 1246 to 1266. He served his master very faithfully and since Nasir-ud-Din did not himself attend to the work of government Balban

managed the affairs of the state. As minister Balban did much useful work. He (i) successfully repulsed the Mongols, (ii) strongly garrisoned the frontier posts, (iii) maintained a strong and efficient army (iv) put down the revolts of the Rajputs and (v) in 1259 ruthlessly crushed the Hindu chiefs of Mewat (south of Delhi) who were plundering the country around. Thus Balban proved a capable minister.

**Balban as King.** In 1266 Balban became the king of Delhi. As king, Balban was very capable but cruel. He inflicted severe punishments on his enemies and rebels. His fame had spread as far as Central Asia. He was one of the ablest of the Delhi Sultans. The chief events of his reign were as follows :—

1. *Suppression of Mewatis, 1266.* The Mewatis had become very bold and fearless. They created a great havoc in the environs of Delhi and even ventured to carry their raids in the city itself. The Sultan personally proceeded against them and inflicted a crushing defeat upon them. Many of them were put to the sword. The Sultan also built a number of outposts for the safety of the capital.

2. *Revolt in Bengal, 1279.* The most important event of the reign of Balban was his suppression of the Bengal revolt. Tughrul Khan, the governor of Bengal declared his independence under the impression that the king was very old and his province so far away from Delhi. He even defeated two royal armies sent against him. At last Balban himself marched against him at the head of a strong force. Tughrul Khan fled to the forests of Jajnagar (Orissa) but was defeated and killed. Balban ordered his followers to be hanged. He now appointed his second son, Bughra Khan, governor of Bengal but at the same time gave him a stern warning that if he ever took it into his head to revolt, he would share the fate of Tughrul Khan.

3. *Internal Administration.* Balban carried out a number of reforms in administration. He (i) reduced the power of the nobles (ii) strengthened the department of justice (iii) organised the system of espionage (iv) stopped drinking and (v) stamped out vice and luxury.

4. *Measures against the Mongols.* During the reign of Balban the Mongols made several raids on India. Balban therefore made a line of strong forts from Delhi to the frontier and stationed armed forces in them. He put his elder son Muhammad in charge of those forts. Muhammad kept the Mongols in check for some time, but in 1285 A. D. he was killed in a battle against them. The shock of the death of his favourite son proved too much for the Sultan and he died shortly afterwards in 1286.

**Balban's Court.** Balban held a magnificent court. Several royal princes of Central Asia had taken refuge at his court. The court rules of Balban were very strict. He never laughed aloud nor did he allow any courtier to laugh in his presence. Nobody could attend the court except in proper dress. The well known Persian poet **Amir Khusro** adorned his court.

**Balban's Character.** Balban was the greatest sovereign of the Slave dynasty. He was a great warrior and an able statesman. He meted out even handed justice and he was so stern in administering it that even his kith and kin could expect no mercy if they were found guilty. His awe was so great that none could dare ill-treat his servants or slaves. During his reign he established peace and order in the country. He had a high sense of kingly duty. He was very reserved and never became free with his nobles even. Though at times he behaved like a heartless tyrant, he was very affectionate in his private life. He was also a patron of learning.

*Note:—*Balban was succeeded by his grandson Kaikobad, the son of Bughra Khan, governor of Bengal. He was very indolent and luxurious. In 1290 Jalal-ud-Din Khilji, the governor of the Punjab, got him put to death and became king himself. Thus the Khilji dynasty began.

## 2. THE KHILJI DYNASTY


1290 A.D.—1320 A.D.

**Jalal-ud-Din Khilji, 1290—1296.** Sultan Jalal-ud-Din Khilji was the founder of the Khilji dynasty. When he came to the throne, he was seventy years of age. By nature

he was extremely mild. For this reason there were several revolts but they were all put down. Mongols also invaded India but they were repulsed. Some Mongols embraced Islam and settled near Delhi at a place which came to be called Mughalpura. *The most important event of his reign was the invasion of Deogiri by his nephew Ala-ud-Din.*

**Invasion of Deogiri, 1294.** Jalal-ud-Din appointed his nephew Ala-ud-Din (who was also his son-in-law) governor of Kara and Oudh. Ala-ud-Din was a brave and daring young man. He made up his mind to invade Deogiri whose immense riches he had heard much. At the head of 8000 soldiers he invaded the Deccan, and made a sudden attack on Ram Chandra Dev, Raja of Deogiri. The raja having been taken by surprise was defeated and was obliged to pay a heavy tribute besides ceding the territory of Ellichpur. Ala-ud-Din returned to Kara laden with immense booty.

**Murder of Jalal-ud-Din** When Jalal-ud-Din heard of the victory of his nephew, he came to Kara to receive him. But Ala-ud-Din had evil designs, he wanted to capture the throne of Delhi. At the time of meeting Jalal-ud-Din was murdered. Then Ala-ud-Din murdered most of the male members of his family and became king himself.

 **Q. Give a brief account of the conquests, administration (internal policy) and character of Ala-ud-Din Khilji. (Very Important) (P. U. 1912-19-22-23-26-34-42.)**

**Ala-ud-Din Khilji, 1296 – 1316.** Ala-ud-Din Khilji was the nephew and son-in-law of Jalal-ud-Din Khilji, the founder of the Khilji dynasty. He was an ambitious young man and his uncle loved him very dearly. Jalal-ud-Din appointed him the ruler of Kara and Oudh. In 1294 he invaded Deogiri (see above) and brought back untold wealth. He ascended the throne in 1296 after killing his uncle. As soon as he became king, he won over the nobles and ministers by bribes and freely distributed money among the people so that they might forget the murder of Jalal-ud-Din and support him.

Ala-ud-Din reigned about twenty years. He was a very

powerful and successful monarch. He made some conquests in Northern India, established Muslim power in the Deccan, repulsed Mongol invasions and introduced many reforms in the administration.

### Conquests.

1. **Gujarat, 1297.** Ala-ud-Din sent his generals Ulagh Khan and Nusrat Khan to conquer Gujarat. Raja Karan, the ruler of Gujarat fled away and Gujarat was conquered. This conquest is notable for two reasons: (1) Kamala Devi, the wife of Raja Karan was brought to Delhi where she was married to Ala-ud-Din. (2) Kafur, a Hindu slave and a native of Cambay was also captured. This man conquered the Deccan for the Muslims. After the conquest of Gujarat, Ala-ud-Din turned his attention to the subjugation of Rajputana.

2. **Ranthambor, 1299—1301.** Ranthambor was an important state of Rajputana. Its ruler Hamir Dev was a brave Rajput chief. Ala-ud-Din sent a large army to conquer it but this army was repulsed. Then the Sultan himself attacked the fort and after a long siege which lasted nearly a year Raja Hamir Dev was defeated and killed. The fort was captured in 1301.

3. **Chitor, 1303.** Encouraged by his success against Ranthambor the Sultan thought of conquering Mewar, the premier state in Rajputana. Its capital was Chitor and Rana Bhim Singh ruled there. It is said that Padmani the wife of Rana Bhim Singh was very beautiful, and Ala-ud-Din wanted to marry her. For this reason and for the love of conquest he invaded Chitor. The Rajputs fought bravely but were defeated and Chitor was conquered. Rani Padmani burnt herself on the funeral pyre along with other Rajput women.

*Note:—A few years later Chitor was recovered by the Rajputs.*

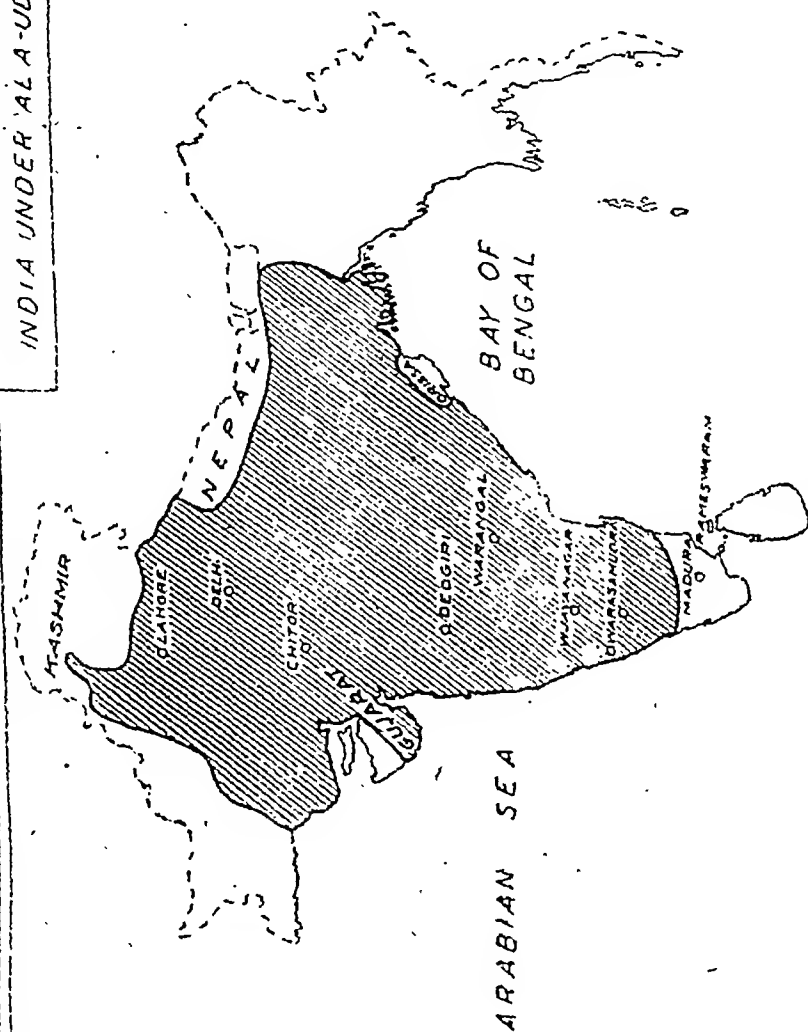
4. **Malwa, 1305.** Malwa was conquered in 1305. After this several other states *viz.*, Mandu, Ujjain, Dhar, Chanderi etc. were also taken. Thus by the end of 1305 Ala-ud-Din reduced nearly the whole of Northern India.

**5. Conquest of the Deccan, 1305—12.** After reducing Northern India, Ala-ud-Din turned his attention to the conquest of the Deccan and entrusted this task to his able general Malik Kafur. At that time there were four important kingdoms in the Deccan (i) *Deogiri* was ruled by the Yadav dynasty and its ruler was Ramchandra Dev. (ii) *Telingana* with its capital at Warrangal was ruled by the Kakatiya dynasty. Its ruler was Partap Rudradev. (iii) *Dwarasamudra* comprising almost the whole of modern Mysore state was under the Hosayalas. Its ruler was Vir Ballal. (iv) *Madura* in the far south was ruled by the Pandayas. These kingdoms were jealous of one another and they often fought among themselves. This made the work of conquest rather easy.

Kafur, first of all, marched against Deogiri, defeated Raja Ramchandra Dev and sent him to Delhi. During this campaign, Deval Devi, daughter of Kamla Devi by chance fell into the hands of the royal army. She was sent to Delhi where she was married to Khizr Khan the son of Ala-ud-Din. From Deogiri Kafur proceeded against Warrangal. Its raja Partap Rudra Dev put up a brave resistance but was defeated and had to offer a large booty. Kafur then (1310) returned to Delhi carrying with him untold wealth. But his work of the conquest of the Deccan was not yet complete. So he was sent again. He now conquered Dwarasamudra and Madura and reached as far as Rameshwaram where he is said to have built a mosque also. In 1311, he returned to Delhi with a large booty. In the meanwhile Deogiri had again become independent under Shankar Dev, the son of Raja Ramchandra Dev. So Kafur was again sent to Deogiri. Shankar Dev was defeated and killed in 1312 and thus the whole of the Deccan was subjugated.

**Mongol Invasions.** Early during Ala-ud-Din's reign (1296—1308) the Mongols attacked India several times but every time they were repulsed. Their most dreadful invasion occurred in 1298 when about 200,000 of them reached as far as Delhi under their leader *Qutub Khwaja*. The Sultan personally marched against them at the head of a large army. The Mongols were defeated and dispersed. Even after this the Mongols continued their raids but shared the

INDIA UNDER ALA-UD-DIN





1. The Sultan had a short temper. He flew into rage over trifles and inflicted severe punishments.

2. Common people could not understand his novel schemes. The Sultan, however, liked that they should think and act in the way he did but when they failed to do so, the Sultan was harsh on them. This disgusted the people very much. Moreover these schemes depleted the treasury.

3. A severe famine broke out in the country and lasted for several years. This proved a great drain on the resources of the state but the distress of the people was not relieved. This estranged the sympathies of the people.

4. The Sultan was very liberal in his religious views. He did not allow the *ulemas* to interfere in his policy. This turned the orthodox Muslims against him.

5. The Sultan was especially generous towards foreigners. He had appointed them to high posts and given them lavish gifts. These foreign Amirs tried to usurp the power for themselves. So they rose in revolt in different parts of the empire and this caused great unrest.

6. The policy of appointing foreigners to high offices greatly displeased the native Musalmans because they regarded it an encroachment on their rights. So they turned against the Sultan.

**Q.** Give a brief account of the reign of Feroz Tughlak with special reference to (a) his reforms (b) his irrigation works (c) his buildings (d) his religious policy (e) his character in general. (V. Important) (P.U 1937-40)

**Feroz Shah Tughlak 1351—1388.** Muhammad Tughlak left no son. So Feroz Shah Tughlak who was a cousin of the late Sultan ascended the throne. His mother was a Rajput woman. He was unwilling to come to the throne but was at last prevailed upon by the nobles to do so. He is chiefly noted for his works of public utility. His reign was a period of peace and prosperity. For these reasons he is considered the best of the Tughlak kings. He had a very able minister in Khan Jehan Maqbool who served him most loyally during the first half of his reign.

**Military Campaigns.** Feroz was not an able general and his military expeditions were not successful.

1. He twice invaded **Bengal** which had become independent during the reign of Muhammad Tughlak. In 1353 he besieged Haji Ilyas, the ruler of Bengal in the fort of Ikhdala but his heart melted with pity on hearing the wails of women and he came back to Delhi. Again in 1359 he led another expedition against Bengal but met with no better success and had to acknowledge the independence of Bengal.

2. While coming back from his second expedition of Bengal he subdued modern **Orissa**, then called Jajnagar.

3. Next year (1360—61) he besieged **Kangra**. After a siege lasting for six months the raja submitted. He was, however, pardoned and re-instated.

4. After this (1362—63) Feroze Tughlak turned his attention to **Sind**. The province was conquered but the Sultan entrusted its government to a brother of the former raja.

5. No attempt, however, was made to conquer the Deccan which province, therefore, became quite independent of Delhi.

**Reforms.** The administration of Feroz was very praiseworthy. He did his best for the peace and prosperity of his subjects and carried out many reforms with the help of his able minister Khan Jehan Maqbool—a Hindu convert from Telingana.

1. He traced the victims of Muhammad Tughlak's tyranny and relieved their distress. Moreover, he cancelled all debts which the late Sultan had advanced to the agriculturists.

2. He softened the punishments. Brutal punishments like cutting off of hands, feet, ears, nose etc. were abolished.

3. He abolished many improper taxes and continued only four taxes which were sanctioned by the Islamic law. Thus trade and agriculture flourished and the country grew rich.

4. He arranged to find work for the unemployed and the poor and sanctioned pensions for the old. Moreover he made the posts almost hereditary.

5. He arranged to teach industries and handicrafts to slaves by which they became useful members of society. But soon their number grew very large (18,000) and they became a danger to the empire.

6. The Sultan opened schools and colleges for the spread of education and fixed allowances for the learned *maulvis*.

7. He established a separate department called "Diwan-i-Khairat" for the help of the poor and the needy. This department also arranged for the marriage of the poor girls.

8. He established a hospital at Delhi, where free medicine and food were supplied to the patients and qualified physicians attended to them.

**Irrigation Works.** *Feroz Tughlak paid special attention to the improvement of agriculture.* For irrigation he constructed many dams and dug canals from the Jumna and the Sutlej. He also restored old tanks which had fallen in disrepair. The present Western Jumna Canal follows the track of Feroz Tughlak's canal. Thus barren lands became productive. The Sultan reduced land revenue also and he took particular care that no hardship was caused to the peasants. This made the people prosperous and the income of the government also increased.

**Buildings.** *Feroz Tughlak was a great builder. He took special interest in constructing buildings and works of public utility.* He is credited with no less than 845\* public works. He founded new cities, built mosques, inns, roads, public baths, bridges, etc. He also established schools, colleges, hospitals and opened alms-houses for the poor and the needy. His most notable work of public utility was the construction of the Western Jumna Canal. Of the cities which he founded the more important were *Ferozabad* (now called *Kotla Ferozshah*) near Delhi, *Hissar Feroza*

---

\* 50 dams, 40 mosques, 30 colleges, 100 caravan serais, 200 towns, 30 reservoirs, 20 palaces, 100 hospitals, 100 public baths, 150 bridges, 10 public wells, 5 mausoleums, 10 pillars.

(now called Hissar), *Fatehabad* and *Jaunpur*. He also showed great interest in the preservation of old monuments. Two Asokan pillars, one from Topra in Ambala district and the other from Meerut were removed and transplanted at Ferozabad. Besides, the Sultan was a great lover of gardens. He is said to have laid out 1200 gardens near Delhi and many more at other places. These gardens were a source of income to the government.

**Religious Policy.** Feroz was a pious and devout Sunni Muslim. But like other rulers of his age he was intolerant of other religions. He imposed *jizia* even on the Brahmans who had so far been exempt from this tax and forbade the public worship of idols and the erection of new temples or repair of old ones. He encouraged his subjects to accept Islam. His treatment towards the Shias was also not good.

**His Character.** Feroz Tughlak was a very pious, merciful and God-fearing ruler. He was just and generous and did nothing without consulting the holy Koran. He restored order and peace in the country and built many works of public utility. He was always kind to the poor and the needy and worked hard for the welfare of his subjects. He hated pomp and show and used only earthen vessels in his place. He had a great regard for holy men. But he was not a good general.

*Feroz Tughlak committed one serious mistake, that instead of paying his officers in cash he renewed the system of granting jagirs. At the same time he made Government posts hereditary. This gave his ministers and nobles an opportunity to become independent of the king and proved one of the causes of the break-up of the Pathan empire.*

In 1388 Feroz Tughlak died after a reign of thirty-seven years at the age of 80.

**Q. What do you know about Timur? Give a brief account of his invasion and its consequences (Important)**

**Amir Timur.** Amir Timur was a mighty conqueror of Central Asia. He was a king of Turkistan and Samarkand was his capital. He was tall of stature and early in life he became lame of a leg. For this reason

Timurlang or Timurlang (Tamerlane). Timur was a brave and daring warrior. The whole of Central Asia acknowledged his authority. In 1398 he invaded India. He was 62 years of age at that time.

**Timur's Invasion, 1398.** At the time of Timur's invasion Mahmud Tughlak the last king of the Tughlak dynasty ruled in Delhi. He was a weak king and there was misrule in the country. Hearing of this anarchy in the Delhi empire Timur invaded India in 1398.

At the head of 92000 soldiers Timur reached the very walls of Delhi without meeting with any serious opposition. Here Mahmud came out to fight, but was defeated and fled to Gujarat. Timur now entered Delhi in triumph. One day there was some quarrel between the soldiers of Timur and the people of Delhi in which some soldiers of Timur were killed. In a rage Timur ordered a general massacre. For five days his soldiers killed and plundered. At last after a stay at Delhi of about 15 days Timur returned to Samarkand with a large booty. Before he left he appointed Khizr Khan, the governor of the Punjab, his viceroy.

**Effects of the Invasion.** 1. The empire of Delhi was dismembered and there was misrule in the country. Many governors and local chiefs became independent.

2. Timur took with him abundant wealth and the country became poor. After his return there was a severe famine in the country and many lives were lost. He also took with him several thousand artisans to erect buildings for him at his capital.

*Note*—Sometime after Timur's invasion Mahmud came back to Delhi and died in 1412.

#### 4. THE SAYYAD DYNASTY

1414 A. D.—1450 A. D.

After Mahmud Tughlak Delhi was without a king for two years. Then Khizr Khan, the Viceroy of Timur, became the King of Delhi in 1414. Khizr Khan was a Sayyid and for this reason this dynasty was called the Sayyad

dynasty. There were only four kings of this dynasty, and they reigned about 37 years. The rule of this dynasty was confined to Delhi and a few surrounding districts. These rulers neither assumed the title of Sultan nor struck coins in their names. The last Sayyad king made over the kingdom to Bahlol Lodhi, the Afghan governor of the Punjab and himself retired. Thus the Lodhi dynasty began.

---

## 5. LODHI DYNASTY

1451 A. D.—1526 A. D.

**Bahlol Lodhi, 1451—1488.** Bahlol Lodhi was the founder of the Lodhi dynasty. He was a brave soldier. As soon as he came to the throne he sought to restore the greatness of the Delhi kingdom. Accordingly first of all he conquered territories surrounding Delhi. Then after a continuous war which lasted almost throughout his reign *he conquered the powerful kingdom of Jaunpur*. He was succeeded by his son Ibrahim Lodhi.

**Sikandar Lodhi, 1488—1517.** Like his father Sikandar Lodhi was an able and powerful king. He conquered Bihar and Tirhut. He transferred the capital from Delhi to Agra. The village of Sikandra near Agra where the tomb of Akbar stands was named after Sikandar. Sikandar was the most capable monarch of the Lodhi Dynasty. His administration was very efficient. There was peace and prosperity during his reign, and food was cheap. He was succeeded by his son Ibrahim Lodhi.

**Ibrahim Lodhi, 1517—1526.** Ibrahim Lodhi was the last king of this dynasty. He was a very cruel and bad tempered king. He often insulted the Pathan nobles. For this reason there were many revolts during his reign, and at last Daulat Khan Lodhi, the governor of the Punjab, invited Babur, the king of Kabul, to conquer India. Babur gladly accepted the invitation and defeated Ibrahim Lodhi in the battle of Panipat in 1526. Ibrahim was killed in the battle and Babur became master of Delhi. The death of Ibrahim put an end to the Sultanate, and the Mughal dynasty began.

**Q.** How long did the Pathan rule (Sultanate of Delhi) last in Northern India? State clearly the circumstances that led to its overthrow. (P. U. 1932]

**The Pathan Rule.** In Northern India the Pathan rule lasted from 1206 to 1526, i. e., for about 300 years. Qutb-ud-Din Aibak founded it, and Babur put an end to it by defeating Ibrahim Lodhi, its last king, in the battle of Panipat.

**Causes of the Decline.** The following were the main causes of the decline of the Pathan rule or the Sultanate.

1. *Hot Climate.* In the beginning the Muslims were very brave and hardy as they had come from a cold climate, but in course of time the hot climate of India made them indolent and weak.

2. *Despotic Government.* The Pathan rule was despotic. It was therefore, necessary for the strength of the empire that the king should be powerful. But there were very few powerful kings among the Pathans. With the exception of Qutb-ud Din Aibak, Altamash, Balban and Ala-ud Din, there were hardly any capable monarchs among them.

3. *The Extent of Empire.* The Pathan empire was very extensive and in those days when the means of communication were very defective it was very difficult to keep control over distant provinces. So the very extent of the empire brought about its ruin. From time to time many governors declared their independence.

4. *Disloyalty of governors.* The governors of provinces were never loyal except when the king was strong. They seized upon every opportunity to declare their independence.

5. *Muhammad Tughlak's Policy.* The foolish schemes and tyrannies of Muhammad Tughlak gave rise to many revolts in the empire. Bengal and the Deccan became independent for ever.

6. *The Jagir System of Feroz.* It was a serious mistake on the part of Feroz Tughlak that he introduced the system of granting jagirs instead of making cash pay-

ments to officers. It was easy enough for the jagirdars to become independent of the control of king.

7 *The Mongol Invasions.* The Mongol invasions weakened the Pathan empire. In 1398 the invasion of Timur shook it to its very foundations.

8. *The Invasion of Babur.* The last of the Pathan kings [brahim was very arrogant and ill-tempered]. All Pathan nobles were dissatisfied with him. Accordingly Babur took advantage of this situation and invaded the country. Thus the Pathan rule came to an end.

9. *Indifference of Hindu Subjects.* The Sultans never sought to win the goodwill of the Hindus who formed the majority of their subjects. The Rajput states, too, declared their independence whenever an opportunity offered itself.

## CHAPTER V

### THE BAHMANI AND VIJAYANAGAR KINGDOMS

During the reign of Muhammad Tughlak the Deccan ceased to be part of the Pathan empire. Two kingdoms were founded here. One Bahmani, a Muslim kingdom was founded by Hassan, and the second Vijayanagar, a Hindu kingdom was founded by two Hindu brothers Hari Har and Bukka Raya.

**Q** Give a brief account of the rise and fall of the Bahmani kingdom. (P. U 1926)

**Bahmani kingdom, 1347 - 1526.** Bahmani kingdom was a Muslim kingdom which was established in the Deccan during the reign of Muhammad Tughlak. It was founded in 1347 by one Hassan, a brave soldier who made Gulbarga (now in Hyderabad State) his capital. This man claimed to be descended from king Bahman of Iran, therefore he assumed the title of Ala-ud-Din Hassan Shah Bahman. The kingdom came to be known as the Bahmani kingdom.

This kingdom lasted for about 175 years. When it was at the height of its power it stretched from sea to sea.



included the present Northern Sircars, Hyderabad State and a large part of the Bombay Presidency. The rulers of this kingdom were often at war with their neighbouring Hindu kingdom of Vijayanagar. The main cause of these wars was the fertile Raichur Doab lying between the Krishna and the Tungabhadra.

The most important personage of this kingdom was **Mahmud Gawan** a Persian who was minister for a long time and served the state with great devotion. He was a very wise and expert politician and led a very pious and simple life. He brought about many reforms in every department of the administration and founded a college at Bidar, the building of which still stands. At last (1481) his enemies poisoned the ears of the king against him and he was put to death. His death proved to be the beginning of the end of this dynasty.

**Decline.** After the death of Mahmud Gawan, this kingdom began to decline and in a short time was split up into five independent states, viz. (1) Bidar (2) Berar (3) Ahmadnagar (4) Bijapur and (5) Golkanda.

Even after this dismemberment these states continued their wars with the Hindu kingdom of Vijayanagar. At last in 1565 all these states combined and destroyed the Vijayanagar kingdom after the battle of Talikota.

**Note.**—(1) **BIDAR** was founded by one Qasim Barid but was soon absorbed in the kingdom of Bijapur. (2) **BERAR** was founded by one Imad-ul-Mulk. After a time it was annexed by Ahmadnagar. (3) **AHMADNAGAR** was founded by one Nizam Ahmad Shah. Chand Bibi belonged to this family. Shah Jehan annexed it to the Mughal Empire in 1637. (4) **BIJAPUR** was founded by one Yusuf Adil Shah. In 1656 Aurangzeb conquered it. (5) **GOLKANDA** was founded by one Qutub-ul-Mulk. In 1657 Aurangzeb annexed it to the Mughal empire.

**Q** Briefly describe the story of the Vijayanagar kingdom and write a short note on its administration.

**Vijayanagar kingdom, 1336—1565.** It was a Hindu kingdom in the Deccan, and was situated to the south of the Bahmani kingdom from the Krishna to Cape Comorin. It was founded during the reign of Muhammad Tughlak by two Hindu brothers Hari Har and Bukka Raja (1336) in order to stem the tide of Muslim conquest. This kingdom

lasted for about 200 years. Vijayanagar was its capital. The Rajas of this kingdom were often at war with the Bahmani kingdom

The most famous of them was Raja Krishan Dev, *the last great Hindu ruler of Southern India* (1509—1529). He was a very learned man and a capable ruler, and he often defeated the Muslims. He conquered the Raichur Doab from the Sultan of Bijapur. He also carried out many reforms in the administration. He constructed canals for irrigation, built temples and did everything in his power for the welfare of the people. He was on friendly terms with the Portuguese. He was a patron of art and literature and was himself a poet and writer.

**Destruction of Vijayanagar.** The last ruler of this dynasty was Ram Raja. He was a very able but vain man. He made the various states of the Bahmani kingdom fight with each other. At last these Muslim states (with the exception of Berar) sank their differences and attacked Vijayanagar. In 1565 a fierce battle was fought between the Hindus and the Muslims near Talikota in which the Muslims were victorious. Ram Raja fell on the battlefield. About 100,000 Hindus were killed. This battle is known as the **Battle of Talikota**. It put an end to Vijayanagar.

**Administration of Vijayanagar.** The rajas were despotic rulers. The whole kingdom was divided into 200 provinces, each under a governor who was practically despotic and very often belonged to the royal family. Every governor had to pay his annual tribute to the raja and render military service when needed. Taxes were very heavy and punishments for crime were severe. There were canals and dams to promote agriculture. The army numbered about 1,100,000. Villages were administered by Panchayats.

**Capital.** The capital of this kingdom was Vijayanagar. It was a very beautiful and prosperous city with gardens and orchards all through it. It contained very splendid buildings, palaces and temples. It was about 60 miles in circuit and was surrounded by seven walls. Its population was over half a million. After the battle of Talikota in 1565 it was destroyed by the Muhammadans.

---

## CHAPTER VI

### THE MUTUAL INFLUENCE OF HINDUISM AND ISLAM

**Q** Write a short note on the effects of the contact of Hinduism and Islam

**Influence of Intercourse.** Shortly after the establishment of the Muslim power in India, the Hindus and the Muslims began to live like good neighbours. It was natural therefore, that they should influence each other's customs and manners. They influenced each other in the following ways :—

1 Several Hindus, particularly of lower castes embraced Islam to escape the jizia or for some other unavoidable reasons. Muslim married Hindu wives. These new Muslims retained their old customs and manners. In this way Hindu customs and manners were introduced into Muslim households.

2 The *pardah* became stricter among the Hindus. Child marriage and Sati also became more common.

3. The Hindus spoke Hindi and the Muslims spoke Persian. These two languages combined to form a new language which came to be called Urdu.

4. A notable influence of Islam on Hinduism was that among the Hindus too the unity of God came to be emphasised and some reformers condemned the caste system and idol worship. *This also gave rise to the Bhakti Movement.*

**Q** What do you understand by the Bhakti Movement? Give a brief account of the chief reformers of this movement

**Bhakti Movement.** "*Bhakti*" means personal devotion to God, i. e., absorption in the love and service of God. The *Bhaktas* (devotees of God) do not recognise any distinction of caste or untouchability. These people worship God by ecstatic dances, music and religious songs and believe that personal devotion to God alone, independent of rites and ceremonies, leads to salvation.

The doctrine of Bhakti is very old among the Hindus, but this movement was revived with considerable force in India during the 15th and 16th centuries. One reason was that under the influence of Islam several religious leaders came forward who laid emphasis on the unity of God and raised their voice against the distinction of caste and untouchability and at the same time preached Bhakti. One result of their teachings was that conversions to Islam declined because now some of the good points of Islam began to be taught as Hindu doctrines.

**Leaders of the Bhakti Movement.** The following were the most important religious leaders of the time :—

1. **Ramanuja.** He lived in the Deccan in the 12th century. He preached Vaishnavism and declared *bhakti* to be the sole means of salvation.

2. **Ramanand.** He flourished in the 14th century. He mostly lived in Benares and preached *bhakti* in Northern India. He was the first Hindu reformer who preached in the language of the people, *i. e.* Hindi. His disciples came from every caste, high and low. He preached the worship of Rama and Sita.

3. **Kabir.** He was born in the 15th century. There are different stories about his origin. Some say that he was born a Hindu and brought up by one Niru a Muslim weaver. Others say that he was a Muslim who had come under the influence of the Hindus. All the same he was a weaver by trade, and was the most famous disciple of Ramanand. He raised a powerful protest against the distinction of caste and idol worship. He taught that *Allah* is the same as *Ishwar* and is present everywhere. He preached mostly in Bengal and Bihar. Both Hindus and Muslims were his disciples. His *dohas* (verses) are well known throughout India.

4. **Guru Nanak.** He was born in 1469 at Talwandi (now called Nankana Sahib) in Sheikhpura district. His father Kalu was a patwari and also kept a petty shop. At the age of 30 Nanak became a *sadhu* and travelled about the whole of India preaching his cult of Bhakti. His

better trained and skilled in warfare. Moreover Babur was an experienced general and had a fine park of artillery. Ibrahim's army fought gallantly but was defeated and the Sultan himself was killed. *This battle made Babur master of Delhi and Agra, and Moghul power in India was established.*

**2 The Battle of Kanwaha, 1527.** After the battle of Panipat, Babur had to face the Rajputs under their leader Rana Sanga, the brave ruler of Chitor and the hero of a hundred fights. Rana Sanga thought that Babur would return to Kabul after defeating Ibrahim Lodhi. But when he found that Babur had determined to set up a kingdom here, he too made up his mind to oppose him. At Kanwaha near Fatehpur Sikri there took place a stubborn battle. In the beginning the Mughals lost heart, but then Babur encouraged his men with a stirring and impressive speech. He broke all his wine cups and made a vow for the future that he would never drink. Now the Mughals made a brave charge. The Rajputs were repulsed and Rana Sanga fled away from the battlefield.

**3 Capture of Chanderi, 1528.** Next year, that is in 1528, Babur conquered the fort of Chanderi, the well known Rajput fort in Malwa where he defeated the brave Rajput chief Medni Rao.


**4. The Battle of the Gogra, 1529.** After this Babur advanced towards Behar and Bengal where the Afghans under Mahmud Lodhi, a brother of Ibrahim Lodhi, were still in power. In 1529 he defeated the Afghans in a battle on the banks of the Gogra.

After the above mentioned *battles* Babur became master of nearly the whole of Northern India.

**Babur's Character.** Physically Babur was strong and well built. His early difficulties had made him brave and hardy. His Turki chiefs had given him the title of Babur (lion) on account of his bravery. He was so hardy that he made long journeys on horseback. It is said that he often ran on the rampart of the Agra fort with one man tucked up in each arm. He was a first-rate swimmer. He swam across all the Indian rivers (except the Ganges) that came in his way. He possessed remarkable self-confidence.

Babur was also an eminent poet and author. He said verses in Turki as well as Persian. He wrote his own autobiography entitled the '*Tuzk-i-Baburi*. Babur was very jovial and frank. He was very fond of natural scenery and convivial meetings. He was addicted to drink but after the battle of Kanwaha he never drank.

**Babur's Death.** Babur died in 1530. On account of his early death, he could not find time to consolidate (strengthen) his empire. There is an interesting story current about his death. It is said that in the summer of 1530 his son Humayun fell seriously ill, and no treatment did him any good. Somebody suggested it to Babur that he should give away his most valuable possession in charity. Babur thought to himself that his own life was the most valuable thing. So he walked round his bed three times and prayed to God that Humayun's illness should come to him. It is said that it happened exactly as he had wished. Humayun began slowly to recover, and Babur fell ill and after two or three months died on 26th December, 1530. In accordance with his wishes his dead body was taken to Kabul and buried there in a beautiful garden.

 **Q.** Write a short note on Rana Sanga. (Important).  
(P. U 1924-29-31-37-41).

**Rana Sanga.** Rana Sangram Singh, usually known as Rana Sanga, was the brave Rajput ruler of Mewar. He was a veteran warrior and had taken part in several actions against his neighbours. He was respected and honoured all over Rajasthan. Rulers of several states paid him homage. He had lost one eye, one hand and one leg. He had scars of eighty wounds on his body. He had persuaded Babur to invade India but could not bear the thought that Babur should become the king of India. Accordingly when Babur had defeated Ibrahim in the battle of Panipat, Rana Sanga made up his mind to stand against Babur, and in 1527 he bravely fought against him in the battle of Kanwaha. But he was defeated and fled away. Two years later he died.

## CHAPTER VIII

### NASIR-UD-DIN HUMAYUN

#### 1530—1540 and 1555—1556

**Q.** Briefly describe the story of the reign of Humayun.

**Humayun's Accession.** At the death of Babur his eldest son Humayun succeeded him to the throne. He was then 23 years old. On his deathbed Babur had advised Humayun to remain on friendly terms with his brothers.<sup>1</sup> Accordingly as soon as he came to the throne Humayun gave them different territories to rule. *Kamran*, the governor of Kabul and Kandhar, was confirmed in his possessions, and when he occupied the Punjab, even then Humayun did not stir. He gave Mewar (South of Delhi) and Alwar to *Hindal* and Sambhal (Rohilkhand) to *Mirza Askari*. This division of empire, however, proved harmful.

**Humayun's Difficulties.** No sooner did Humayun come to the throne than he was hemmed in by difficulties. The chief reason of these difficulties was that Babur had no time to consolidate his empire. Therefore as soon as he died, revolts broke out everywhere. In the *east* the Afghans of Behar and Bengal, especially Sher Khan a very powerful, ambitious and capable general rose in revolt. In the *south* Bahadur Shah, the king of Gujarat, made preparations for the conquest of Delhi. In the *north-west* his own brother Kamran occupied the Punjab which made it impossible for Humayun to get brave soldiers who could be found in those parts alone. But Humayun's worst enemy was perhaps he himself. He was addicted to opium. He never stuck to anything, but always did things by halves. He left one enemy unsubdued behind him while he turned to meet another.

#### Humayun's Wars.

1. **Invasion of Behar.** First of all Humayun led an army against the Afghans in the east, and defeated them near Lucknow in 1531. But he committed a serious mistake in that he returned to Agra without subduing Sher Khan.

---

<sup>1</sup>Kamran, Askari and Hindal.

Thus Sher Khan had enough time to consolidate his power.

2. **Invasion of Gujarat, 1535.** After defeating the Afghans Humayun set out for Gujarat. The immediate cause of this invasion was that Bahadur Shah had given refuge to some disaffected Afghan and Mogul nobles and was not prepared to dismiss them. Bahadur Shah was defeated and for some time he was a fugitive. At this time Humayun received news that Sher Khan had again rebelled in Bengal. Humayun, therefore, left his brother Askari in Gujarat, and advanced against Sher Khan. As soon as his back was turned Bahadur Shah recovered Gujarat.

3. **War with Sher Khan, 1539-40.** Sher Khan was very clever. When Humayun advanced against him he offered no resistance and let him penetrate freely into the country. Humayun captured Gaur, the capital of Bengal. But the rains now set in and he had to stay there for a long time. An epidemic of malaria broke out and carried off a great many of his soldiers. In the meantime Sher Khan cut off his communications, so that no provisions could reach him. Now Humayun wanted to come back, but Sher Khan made a sudden attack on the retreating army at Chausa near Buxar on the bank of the Ganges (1539). Humayun's army suffered heavy losses. Thousands were killed and drowned. To save his life Humayun put his horse in the river. The horse was drowned in the mid current, but Humayun was saved by a water-carrier called Nizam. On his return to Agra Humayun allowed this Nizam to enjoy kingship for a short time. *This man issued leather coins.* The victory of Chausa made Sher Khan the ruler of Bengal and Bihar. He now took the title of Sher Shah. Next year i.e., in 1540, Humayun again led an army against Sher Shah but was defeated near Kanauj and fled the country. Sher Shah became king.

**Humayun's Exile.** After his defeat at Kanauj at the hands of Sher Shah, Humayun came to Lahore in the hope of getting some help from his brother, Kamran. But Kamran had already left for Kabul for fear of Sher Shah. In disappointment Humayun turned his face towards Sind and after suffering a great many hardships reached Amarkot where his son Akbar was born (1542). It was here that



Bairam Khan, who later on became famous as Akbar's guardian, rejoined him. From Amarkot Humayun went to Iran where Shah Tahmasp agreed to help him on the condition that Humayun would declare himself a Shia and hand over Qandhar after conquering it to the Shah. With the Iranian army (14,000 strong) Humayun came back and after a hard fight with his brothers he captured Qandhar and Kabul.

**Humayun's Restoration** Sher Shah Suri had died in the meantime. His successors were very weak. In 1555, Humayun attacked India and after defeating Sikandar Suri (the ruler of the Punjab) at Sarhind occupied Delhi and Agra. Sikandar Suri fled to the Siwalik hills. Thus after an exile of 15 years Humayun became king again.


**Humayun's Death.** But he was not destined to rule long. Within six months of his restoration, as he was coming down the stairs of his library at Delhi he fell down and died shortly after.

**Humayun's Character.** The word 'Humayun' means 'fortunate' but it is an irony of fate that Humayun proved a most unlucky ruler. He was generous, sympathetic and grateful. He treated his brothers most generously although they proved treacherous. He showed his gratefulness to Nizam the water carrier, by allowing him to rule for some time. He had a good taste in literature and could compose fine verses. Moreover he evinced keen interest in astronomy. But he had certain glaring defects which marred his career. He was irresolute and lacked perseverance. Before finishing the work in hand he would turn to another. Besides he was addicted to opium and was fond of pleasure. He wasted much of his precious time in indolence and merrymaking. He was not a good general either.

## CHAPTER IX

### SHER SHAH SURI

#### 1540—1545

 Q. Give a brief account of the early life, conquests and administration of Sher Shah Suri. What place would

---

After Humayun's defeat at Kanauj in 1540, Bairam Khan fled to Gujarat from where after many adventures he rejoined Humayun at Amarkot.

you give him among the Muslim rulers of India?  
(Very Important) [P. U. 1912-21-24-27-31-37]


**Early life of Sher Shah.** Sher Shah's original name was Farid Khan. He was born in 1486 in Hissar Feroza. His father Hasan was a jagirdar at Sehram in Behar. Hasan had married more than one wife and had a large family. Farid and his mother were not properly treated. Disgusted with the treatment of his father Farid left his home and went to Jaunpur where he applied himself to the study of Arabic and Persian in which he soon gained considerable proficiency. After some time Farid was reconciled to his father who entrusted to him the management of his jagir at Sehram. Farid was then twenty-five years old. Farid managed the estate excellently for eight years and this experience proved of great use to him in his later life. After some time he again left his home and took up service with the governor of Behar. It was here that he once killed a tiger and came to be called Sher Khan. He rose step by step till he became the independent ruler of Behar. When Humayun made war upon him he defeated him at *Chausa* in 1539, and became the ruler of Bengal and Behar. He now assumed the title of Sher Shah. In 1540 he again defeated Humayun at Kanauj. Now he became king of Hindustan.

**Conquests.** Soon after coming to the throne Sher Shah occupied the *Punjab*. Next year (1542) he conquered *Malwa* and *Sind*. After this he attacked *Jodhpur*, the capital of Marwar, but did not achieve much success. During this campaign a body of Rajput cavalry stormed the camp of Sher Shah so that he narrowly escaped with his life. Sher Shah is said to have exclaimed, "I had nearly lost the kingdom of Delhi for a handful of *Bajra*." Next he took Chitor (1544). In 1545 he besieged *Kalanjar*, but was killed by the explosion of a mine.

**Administration.** *Sher Shah Suri was the first Muslim king of India who paid special attention to administration.* During his brief reign of five years he introduced many reforms for which he is considered one of the most famous rulers.

1. **Civil Government.** Sher Shah divided the whole


kingdom into 47 provinces. The provinces were divided into sarkars and sarkars into parganas. For effective administration he appointed officers in every part of his empire.

2.  Land Revenue. He got the whole land surveyed, and fixed one-fourth of the produce as land revenue which could be paid in cash or in kind. He made it a point to see that no hardship was caused to the cultivators, and no injury was done to the crops. In times of drought money was advanced to the cultivators.

3. Protection of Life and Property. Life and property were very well protected. If a theft took place anywhere the *muqaddam* or the *lumbardar* of the village had to trace it or he had to make good the loss. In case of murder if the *muqaddam* could not trace the murderers, he himself was hanged. Thus life and property were safe and people could travel about freely. In fact a decrepit old woman carrying gold could travel in any part of the country without the least fear of molestation.

4. Intelligence Department. Sher Shah appointed spies all over his kingdom who kept the king informed of all that happened in the country. No government officer thus dared oppress the people. Like other Muslim kings he had employed *muhtsibs* (censors) who looked after the morals of the people.

5. Administration of Justice. Sher Shah was a very just ruler, who made no distinction between a Hindu and a Muslim or a prince and a peasant. Nobody could escape punishment for reason of his high rank or noble birth. Punishments were very severe and deterrent. Theft and bribery were punished with death. Courts of justice were properly supervised.

6.  Works of Public Utility. Sher Shah built good roads for the travellers. He planted shady trees on both sides of roads and built inns and sank wells at regular intervals along those roads. In these inns there were separate arrangements for food and lodging for the Hindus and the Muslims. The most famous of these roads was the Grand Trunk Road\* which stretched from Sunargaon near

---

\*This road was subsequently rebuilt by Lord Dalhousie.

Dacca to Attock. Another road connected Agra with Burhanpur, a third connected Agra with Jodhpur and Chitor and a fourth connected Lahore and Multan. On account of the improved means of communication trade also flourished.

7. ~~13~~ Military Administration. Sher Shah possessed a trained and well-equipped army consisting of 150000 cavalry and 25000 infantry. Besides this the nobles were also required to furnish troops. He introduced the system of branding horses so that the number of government horses could be checked. The identification marks of troopers were also entered in a register. The army was paid in cash. Strict instructions were issued that during war soldiers should not injure crops. As a rule, Sher Shah personally recruited the soldiers and fixed their salaries.

8. Buildings. Sher Shah was very fond of buildings. He founded the new city of Delhi and the town of Rohtas in the Punjab. His own tomb at Sehsram which he built in his lifetime is one of the most magnificent buildings in India.

9. Post. There was a regular system of post. There were horse posts at regular intervals and couriers carried the mails. This arrangement was made for government mails only.

10. Reformed Coinage. Sher Shah reformed coinage also. Before him coinage was base. Sher Shah minted coins of pure silver.

11. Charities. Sher Shah established many schools, paid stipends to students and established many free kitchens which cost 180,000 gold mohurs a year.

Sher Shah's place in History. Sher Shah ranks as one of the greatest sovereigns of India. He was very clever and ambitious. He was gifted with great foresight and was a master of strategy. *Had he lived longer or had his successors been as capable as he, Great Mughals would never have come back on the stage of Indian History.* He was a great administrator and was stern in administering justice. He was kind to the poor and was particularly careful of the



**Muhammad Adil Shah. 1553—1555.** Salim Shah was succeeded by one Mubariz Khan, a chief of the Sur family. This man assumed the title of Adil Shah. He was an ease-loving and cowardly fellow. He entrusted the government to his Hindu minister Hemu. Thus there were revolts throughout the country. One Ibrahim Suri captured Delhi and Agra. In the Punjab Sikandar Suri became an independent king. Adil Shah himself retired to Chunar. This state of disorder enabled Humayun to come back to India and seize the throne of Delhi. But as we have seen he died only six months after his restoration.

## CHAPTER X

### JALAL-UD-DIN MUHAMMAD AKBAR

#### THE GREAT

1556—1605

**Akbar's Accession.** During his wanderings Humayun had married an Iranian lady Hamida Banu Begum. Akbar was born of her in 1542 at Amarkot in Sind. When Humayun died Akbar was nearly fourteen years of age. Along with his tutor Bairam, Akbar was at this time in hot pursuit of Sikandar Suri in the Punjab. Bairam celebrated the coronation of Akbar at Kalanaur (Gurdaspur district) on February 14, 1556, and he himself became his regent.

**Early Difficulties.** In the beginning Akbar was surrounded on all sides by enemies. In the Punjab Sikandar Suri was strong. In the east Adil Shah Suri was scheming to recover his kingdom. At Kabul his half brother Mirza Hakim was an independent king. *But his worst enemy was Hemu who as soon as Humayun died captured Delhi and Agra and became king under the title of Vikramajit.* Accordingly Akbar, first of all, fought with Hemu and defeated him in the Second Battle of Panipat.

**Q.** Briefly describe the Second Battle of Panipat.

**Second Battle of Panipat, 1556.** This battle was fought



chief Baz Bahadur. After a brief resistance Baz Bahadur submitted and Malwa was annexed.

4. **Gondwana, (1564).** Gondwana formed the northern part of the present Central Provinces. The brave Rajput Rani *Durgawati* ruled there. She was a brave, wise and capable woman and ruled her country with wisdom and ability. When Akbar's forces attacked Gondwana, Durgawati offered a brave resistance, but when all hope was lost, she stabbed herself to save her honour. In this way Gondwana was also conquered. This battle was fought near Jubbulpore.

5. **Chitor, (1568).** Chitor was the capital of Mewar, the premier state in Rajputana. Here Rana Ude Singh, the head of the Rajput confederacy, was the ruler. Although several Rajput chiefs had submitted to Akbar and Raja Bihari Mal of Jaipur had even given his eldest daughter to Akbar in marriage, Ude Singh refused to submit and to make a marriage relation with Akbar. At this Akbar attacked Chitor (1567) in person. Rana Ude Singh entrusted the defence of the fort to his commander-in-chief Jaimal and himself retired to the hills. Jaimal held out bravely for a few months but one night when he was directing the repairs of one of the breaches he was shot by Akbar and the fort was captured.

*Note.* Ude Singh founded the city of Udepur and made it his capital.

6. **Ranthambor and Kalanjar, 1569.** After the conquest of Chitor Akbar turned his attention to other well-known forts of Rajputana. In 1569 he conquered Ranthambor and Kalanjar. In 1570, the Raja of Bikaner also made his submission and gave his daughter in marriage to the emperor. In this way nearly the whole of Rajputana came under Akbar's rule.

7. **Gujarat (1572).** Gujarat was a very rich and fertile province, and it commanded a lucrative trade. Naturally Akbar was anxious to annex it. Muzaffar Shah was the king of Gujarat. In 1572 Akbar invaded Gujarat. The king was found concealed in a corn field and he made his submission. Akbar settled a small pension on him. It was



now that Akbar saw the sea for the first time. This conquest brought Surat and some other ports under Akbar and trade and income of the empire increased. In the following year, a serious rising took place in Gujarat. Akbar at once marched from his capital at Sikri (near Agra) and covering a distance of about 600 miles in nine days reached Gujarat and crushed the revolt. In commemoration of this victory he named his capital Fatehpur Sikri and built the Buland Darwaza there.

8. Bengal (1576). Daud Khan, the Afghan governor of Bengal, refused to submit to Akbar. Akbar, therefore, led an army against Bengal. Daud Khan was defeated and fled to Orissa. Akbar entrusted this campaign to his officers and came back himself. At last Daud Khan was killed in 1576 and Bengal became a province of the Mughal empire.

9. Kabul, Kashmir and Sind. In 1585 Akbar's step-brother Mirza Hakim, the ruler of Kabul, died and *Kabul* was annexed to the Mughal empire. Raja Man Singh was sent there as governor. In 1586 the beautiful valley of *Kashmir* was conquered. In 1591 *Sind*, in 1592 *Orissa* and in 1595 *Kandhar* were annexed to Akbar's empire.

**Deccan Conquests.** After reducing Northern India, Akbar turned his attention to the South. It was a good opportunity, since the Deccan states were at war with each other at this time


1. Conquest of Ahmadnagar, 1600 First of all, Akbar sent his son Murad to conquer Ahmadnagar. At this time the reins of government of Ahmadnagar were in the hands of the brave Sultana Chand Bibi, the aunt (father's sister) of the minor king. Murad laid siege to Ahmadnagar, but Chand Bibi defended the town heroically and Murad achieved no success. At last peace was made, and Chand Bibi ceded Berar to the Mughals. But Chand Bibi was assassinated by her own soldiers in 1599 and in 1600 Prince Danyal conquered Ahmadnagar.

2. Conquest of Asirgarh (1601). In 1601 Akbar

reduced Asirgarh, the strong fort of Khandesh, after a long siege. The fort, standing as it did, on the route from Northern India to the Deccan was of great military importance.

Akbar divided the conquests of the Deccan into three provinces of *Berar*, *Ahmadnagar*, and *Khandesh*.

**Extent of Empire.** Thus the empire of Akbar extended from Bengal to Afghanistan and from Kashmir to the Godavari in the Deccan.

 **Q.** What was Akbar's policy? How did he conciliate the Hindus and the Rajputs? (Very Important)

Or

Describe Akbar's dealings with the Rajputs.

(P U. 1923-35).

**Akbar's Policy.** When Akbar came to the throne, his Muslim nobles proved very turbulent. He very early realized that in order to curb the turbulence of these Muslim nobles, he must needs conciliate the Hindus. As he grew up he came in contact with liberal Muslims under whose influence he learned to be tolerant to his non-Muslim subjects. The chief aim of his policy was to form a united nation by removing all distinctions between the Hindus and the Muslims.

**Akbar and Rajputs.**

In pursuance of his policy Akbar adopted the following measures:—

1. **Marriage Relations.** Akbar made marriage relations with Rajput families. He married the eldest daughter\* of Raja Behari Mal of Jaipur (1562) and thus the Jaipur family became attached to the Mughal empire. Salim was born of this Rani. Later on (1570) Rajput princesses from Bikaner and Jaisalmer also entered the royal harem. Prince Salim also married a Rajput princess, Man Bai, daughter of Raja Bhagwan Das.

2 **High Offices.** Akbar appointed Rajputs and other

---

\* Later on she came to be known as *Maryam-i-Zamani*.

now that Akbar saw the sea for the first time. This conquest brought Surat and some other ports under Akbar and trade and income of the empire increased. In the following year, a serious rising took place in Gujarat. Akbar at once marched from his capital at <sup>\*</sup>Sikri (near Agra) and covering a distance of about 600 miles in nine days reached Gujarat and crushed the revolt. In commemoration of this victory he named his capital Fatehpur Sikri and built the Buland Darwaza there.

8. **Bengal (1576).** Daud Khan, the Afghan governor of Bengal, refused to submit to Akbar. Akbar, therefore, led an army against Bengal. Daud Khan was defeated and fled to Orissa. Akbar entrusted this campaign to his officers and came back himself. At last Daud Khan was killed in 1576 and Bengal became a province of the Mughal empire.

9. **Kabul, Kashmir and Sind.** In 1585 Akbar's step-brother Mirza Hakim, the ruler of Kabul, died and *Kabul* was annexed to the Mughal empire. Raja Man Singh was sent there as governor. In 1586 the beautiful valley of *Kashmir* was conquered. In 1591 *Sind*, in 1592 *Orissa* and in 1595 *Kandhar* were annexed to Akbar's empire.

**Deccan Conquests.** After reducing Northern India, Akbar turned his attention to the South. It was a good opportunity, since the Deccan states were at war with each other at this time

1. **Conquest of Ahmadnagar, 1600** First of all, Akbar sent his son Murad to conquer Ahmadnagar. At this time the reins of government of Ahmadnagar were in the hands of the brave Sultana Chand Bibi, the aunt (father's sister) of the minor king. Murad laid siege to Ahmadnagar, but Chand Bibi defended the town heroically and Murad achieved no success. At last peace was made, and Chand Bibi ceded Berar to the Mughals. But Chand Bibi was assassinated by her own soldiers in 1599 and in 1600 Prince Danyal conquered Ahmadnagar.

2. **Conquest of Asirgarh (1601).** In 1601 Akbar


---

<sup>\*</sup>Sikri a town about 20 miles away from Agra was Akbar's capital from 1569 to 1585.

reduced Asirgarh, the strong fort of Khandesh, after a long siege. The fort, standing as it did, on the route from Northern India to the Deccan was of great military importance.

Akbar divided the conquests of the Deccan into three provinces of *Berar*, *Ahmadnagar*, and *Khandesh*.

**Extent of Empire.** Thus the empire of Akbar extended from Bengal to Afghanistan and from Kashmir to the Godavari in the Deccan.

 **Q.** What was Akbar's policy? How did he conciliate the Hindus and the Rajputs? (Very Important)

Or

Describe Akbar's dealings with the Rajputs.

(P U. 1923-35).

**Akbar's Policy.** When Akbar came to the throne, his Muslim nobles proved very turbulent. He very early realized that in order to curb the turbulence of these Muslim nobles, he must needs conciliate the Hindus. As he grew up he came in contact with liberal Muslims under whose influence he learned to be tolerant to his non-Muslim subjects. The chief aim of his policy was to form a united nation by removing all distinctions between the Hindus and the Muslims.

**Akbar and Rajputs.**

In pursuance of his policy Akbar adopted the following measures :—

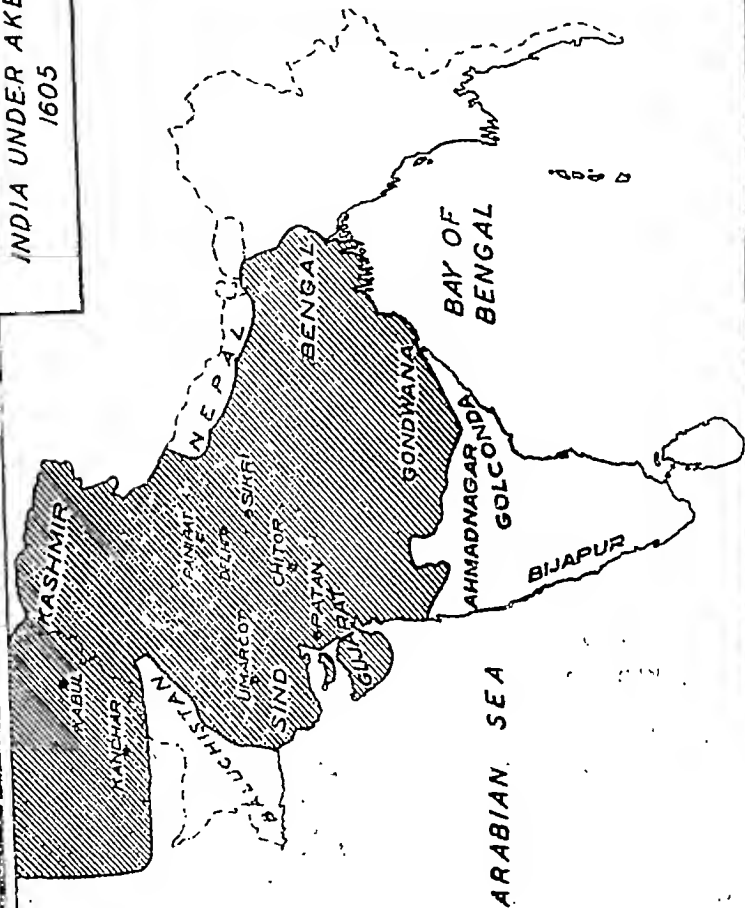
1. **Marriage Relations.** Akbar made marriage relations with Rajput families. He married the eldest daughter\* of Raja Behari Mal of Jaipur (1562) and thus the Jaipur family became attached to the Mughal empire. Salim was born of this Rani. Later on (1570) Rajput princesses from Bikaner and Jaisalmer also entered the royal harem. Prince Salim also married a Rajput princess, Man Bai, daughter of Raja Bhagwan Das.

2 **High Offices.** Akbar appointed Rajputs and other

---

\* Later on she came to be known as *Maryam-i-Zamani*.

INDIA UNDER AKBAR  
1605





**Q.** Give an account of the administration of Akbar. What are your reasons for regarding him as the greatest of the Mughal emperors? (Very Important)

[P. U. 1923-24-30].

Akbar's administration was praiseworthy. He introduced useful reforms in every department—civil, military and revenue. During his government, careers were open to talents alone. Both Hindus and Muslims were admitted to Public services.

**The Central Government.** Akbar was an absolute ruler. He was not only the head of the civil administration but also the commander-in-chief of the army. He was, however, helped by his ministers, chief among whom were the Prime Minister, the Finance Minister, the War Minister, and the Minister for Religious Matters. The emperor was the fountain of all justice. He himself decided important cases and heard appeals.

**Provincial Administration.** Akbar divided his empire into fifteen provinces (excluding the three provinces in the Deccan). Every province was under a governor (Subedar), who was either a member of the Imperial family or a noble of a high rank. There were also a *Diwan*, a *Faujdar*, an *Amil* and many other officers in every province. The Diwan looked after the income and expenditure, the Faujdar was the highest officer of the army and the Amil was the revenue collector. The provinces were divided into *sarkars* and *sarkars* into *parganas*. In towns *Qazis* were appointed to hear civil cases and *Kotwals* to keep the peace. Punishments were severe and there was no written code. Village affairs were managed by the *panchayats*.

**Military Administration.** The military officers were called *Mansabdars*. There were thirty three grades of these mansabdars. These people had to supply the emperor with a fixed number of horsemen when required. The lowest officer had to supply ten and the highest 10,000 horsemen. The three highest grades of the mansabdars were reserved for members of the royal family and nobles of high rank. All these mansabdars were responsible for the maintenance of

peace and collection of revenue in their respective territories. They also heard criminal cases. A *serious defect* in this system was that these mansabdars did not maintain the required number of troopers, but at the time of checking would gather men for the occasion and showed the required number. To guard against this evil of false musters Akbar followed the practice of Sher Shah of *branding horses and entering the identification marks of troopers* in a register. The *mansabdars* were, as a rule, paid in cash, though some held jagirs.

The imperial army consisted of infantry, artillery, cavalry, elephants and navy. Of these the most important branch was the cavalry and special attention was paid to it.

**Revenue Administration.** Akbar's greatest achievement is his *Revenue Administration*. This was carried out by Raja Todar Mal, his Revenue Minister and Muzaffar Khan Turbati. All cultivable land was measured and classified in four\* grades according to fertility. Revenue was fixed at one-third of the average produce which could be paid in cash or in kind, but Akbar preferred cash payment especially in the case of perishable articles. In order to fix the cash rates Todar Mal took the average of actual prices during the preceding ten years. During famine the revenue was reduced and on occasions the farmers were given *takavi* i.e., loans for the purchase of seed and cattle. The revenue was collected direct from the cultivators and the revenue collectors were especially warned not to oppress the cultivators. The result was that the cultivators were now better off and the government revenue also increased. In the beginning revenue settlement was made annually but later on it was made decennial (for ten years). This revenue system of Todar Mal forms the basis of the system followed by the British Government in India to-day.

---

\*These four grades were :—

(i) *Polaj* which was never allowed to be fallow (ii) *Parauti* which was sometimes left fallow (iii) *Chachar* allowed to be fallow for three or four years and (iv) *Bajnar* which remained fallow for five years or more.



**Social Reforms.** Akbar introduced social reforms also, the best known among them being :—

1. Child marriage was prohibited.
2. Remarriage of Hindu widows was legalised
3. Efforts were made to stop the practice of *Sati*.
4. Perfect religious liberty was granted. The pilgrim tax and Jizia were abolished, the former in 1563 and the latter in 1564.
5. On certain specified days the slaughter of animals was prohibited.

6. Enslavement of the conquered enemies was abolished.

**The Greatest of the Mughals.** Akbar is considered the greatest of the Mughal rulers for the following reasons :—


1. In reality *Akbar was the real founder of the Mughal rule in India*. Babur had no time to consolidate his empire. Humayun lost the kingdom founded by Babur and Akbar re-established it.

2. Akbar introduced a remarkable system of administration and set it on a firm footing. His civil, military and revenue reforms are a visible proof of his ability.

3. Akbar was the first Muslim king to realise that the stability and the strength of the empire depend on the willing consent of all the subjects and not a particular section. He, therefore, treated the Hindus and the Muslims alike and abolished the jizya. It is worthy of note that at a time when the sovereigns of Europe were persecuting the people professing other faiths, Akbar practised religious toleration and gave religious liberty to his people. This was why his empire was based on the loyalty of all classes of his subjects, and this basis proved stronger and more lasting.

4. Akbar was the first man in the history of India who sought to unite the people into one common nationality. It was with this object that he started his *Din-i-Ilahi*. *He ruled the country as an Indian and not as a Muslim or a Hindu*. During his reign the people were happy and

prosperous.

Q. What do you know of the religious policy of Akbar?  Write a short note on the Din-i-Ilahi.

[P. U. 1915-22 28.]

**Akbar's Religious Policy.** In the beginning Akbar was a Sunni Muslim, but in course of time there came a change in his religious views, and he started a new religion, the *Din-i-Ilahi*. There were several reasons for this change in his religious views.


1. By nature Akbar was a free-thinker and under the influence of his tutor (Abdul Latif) who was a tolerant man Akbar became liberal in his religious views. He was not a staunch Muslim and did not condemn any religion.

2. His Hindu wives and friends influenced his religious views a great deal and he began to appreciate the good points of Hinduism.

3. Shaikh Mubarak and his two sons Faizi and Abul-Fazal, who adorned the court of Akbar were Sufis by faith. Their society also influenced the religious views of the king.

4. Akbar was very fond of religious discussions. In 1575 he built an *Ibadat Khana* or worship house at Fatehpur Sikri where religious debates were held among the followers of different religions. These debates also influenced the religious views of Akbar.

The result of all this was that Akbar began to hate narrow-mindedness and religious bigotry; and he gave full religious liberty to all his subjects. In 1579 he made the leading *ulamas* agree to accept him as the supreme head of religion (like Henry VIII of England).

 **Din-i-Ilahi.** In 1581 Akbar promulgated a new religion called the *Din-i-Ilahi*. In this religion he combined the good points of various religions e.g. Hinduism, Islam, Parsi religion and Christianity. The main doctrines of this religion were:—God is one and Akbar is his Khalifa (vicegerent). A man should use his intellect, blind faith is not religion. Every morning the king would worship the sun and his followers prostrated themselves before him.

Meat eating was prohibited in this religion. But very few people (18) embraced this religion and it died with Akbar's death.

**Q.** Give a brief account of some of the important personages of Akbar's court. (Important)

**Abul Fazl.** Abul Fazl was the ablest of Akbar's 'nine jewels.' He was the son of Shaikh Mubarak and brother of Faizi. He was a great scholar of his time and rose to be Akbar's Prime Minister. He wrote *Ain-i-Akbari* and *Akbarnama*, in which the chief events of Akbar's reign are recorded. Abul Fazl was Sufi by faith and it was with his support that Akbar started the Din-i-Ilahi. Prince Salim grew jealous of him on account of his increasing influence and got him assassinated by Raja Bir Singh Bandela in 1602.

**Faizi.** Faizi was the son of Shaikh Mubarak and the elder brother of Abul Fazl. He was a poet of a high order and a great scholar of Sanskrit and Persian. He translated the Ramayana and the Mahabharata into Persian. His translation of the Gita is still read with interest.

**Todar Mal.** Raja Todar Mal was a Khatri of the Punjab and was one of the 'nine jewels' of Akbar. His chief achievement was his revenue system. He was the Revenue Minister of Akbar. But he was also a veteran general. He rendered meritorious services on the north-western frontier and in Bengal. Before he took up service with Akbar he had been in the employ of Sher Shah Suri in the revenue department.

**Man Singh.** Man Singh was one of the foremost generals of Akbar. He was the adopted son of Raja Bhagwan Das of Jaipur. He took part in a number of campaigns. He defeated Rana Partap at Haldighat in 1576. He was also governor of Kabul and Bengal.

**Birbal.** His real name was Mahesh Das. He was a Bhat by caste and was a native of Kalpi. He was noted for his ready wit and jokes. In 1586 he was killed while fighting against the Yusufzai Afghans on the north-west frontier.

**Abdur Rahim, Khan-i-Khanan.** Abdur Rahim was the son of Bairam Khan. He was born in Lahore in 1556. He also took part in many campaigns. He was a good scholar and poet. He wrote Hindi poetry.

**Q. Write short notes on :—(a) Hemu (b) Chand Bibi.**

**Hemu.** Hemu was at first an ordinary shopkeeper of Rewari, but he was an experienced and skilful business man. He rose to be the prime-minister and commander-in-chief of Adil Shah Suri and carried on the administration very wisely. He was a brave general and a statesman of rare abilities. He had successfully fought many pitched battles. Soon after the death of Humayun he captured Delhi and Agra and ascended the throne of Delhi under the title of Bikramajit. He fought bravely in the Second Battle of Panipat but was defeated, captured and put to death.

**Chand Bibi.** Chand Bibi was the daughter of the king of Ahmadnagar and the wife of Ali Adil Shah king of Bijapur. On the death of her husband she came back to Ahmadnagar and became the regent of her minor nephew. She was a very brave and sagacious woman. In 1595 when Prince Murad attacked Ahmadnagar, she defended the city very bravely. But in 1599 she was assassinated by her own soldiers. After her death Prince Danyal conquered Ahmadnagar.

**Q. Briefly describe the character of Akbar.**

**Personal Appearance.** Akbar was a well-built, strong, and handsome man and a brave soldier. He was of middle stature and wheat (light brown) complexion. His eyes were bright and his eyebrows black. His forehead was broad and open. He had a strong physique, a broad chest and long arms. He had a commanding and sweet voice. He looked every inch a king.

**Habits.** Akbar was very simple in his habits. He ate only one meal a day. He gave up the use of meat, onions and garlic. He loved his relations and was very fond of riding and the chase. He enjoyed elephant fights and was a skilful shot. He loved adventure and was very happy when leading his soldiers to battle. Akbar was very simple-minded, merciful and just. He laughed heartily,

enjoyed jokes but sometimes he lost his temper and was beside himself with rage.

**Intelligence.** Akbar was a man of uncommon intelligence. He was illiterate but his intellect was so well developed that he could understand even the most difficult problems quite easily. All kinds of books were read to him. His memory was so strong that he never forgot what he heard once. He was very fond of listening to religious debates. He was a good inventor. He once invented a machine by which sixteen guns could be cleaned at the same time.

**As Administrator and General.** Akbar was a great administrator and a born general. He attended even to the minutest details of administration and by his genius carved out a large empire. He showed great solicitude for his subjects and did his best to promote their well being.

A remarkable feature of Akbar's character was that *he was not at all bigoted and treated Hindus and Muslims alike.*

**Q.** Who was the real founder of the Mughal empire in India. Babur or Akbar? State your reasons.

**The Founder of the Mughal Empire.** The first Mughal who conquered Northern India was, no doubt, Babur. But it is one thing to conquer a vast territory and it is quite a different thing to found an empire. In order to establish an empire those territories should be brought under an ordered government. But Babur did not live long enough to consolidate his empire or establish an ordered government. So that as soon as he died there were revolts everywhere in the country. Sher Shah Suri drove away Humayun and put an end to this empire. After an exile of fifteen years Humayun came back and had captured only Delhi and Agra when he died.

When, after the death of Humayun, Akbar succeeded to the throne *he was, so to say, a king without a kingdom.* Sikandar Suri was still at large in the Punjab and Hemu had captured Delhi and Agra and assumed the title of Bikramajit. Akbar had to reconquer the country. Akbar conquered all these territories and established a settled

government. He made the foundations of the empire so strong that it lasted about a hundred and fifty years after his death. *Therefore, it was Akbar and not Babur, who can be called the Founder of the Mughal Empire.*

## CHAPTER XI

### NUR-UD-DIN JEHANGIR

#### 1605—1627

**Q. Give a brief account of the reign of Jehangir and describe his character.** (P. U. 1915-27).


**Accession of Jehangir.** Akbar had three sons, Salim, Murad and Danyal. Murad and Danyal had died during the life time of their father as a result of excessive drinking. Only Salim survived him, so he became king under the title of Jehangir.

As soon as he came to the throne Jehangir introduced many useful reforms. (1) He abolished barbarous punishments such as cutting off of nose, ears, etc., (2) he officially forbade the use of intoxicating drinks and drugs, (3) he abolished many unfair taxes, (4) he reorganised the Customs Department and (5) in order to dispense justice he hung up a gold chain—the chain of Justice—outside the wall of his palace, so that whoever pulled that chain had his complaint heard by the king.

The chief events of the reign of Jehangir were as follows:—

**Rebellion of Khusro.** A few months after the accession of Jehangir, his eldest son Khusro, who was a handsome, noble and enlightened prince, rebelled, left Agra and advanced on Lahore and laid siege to it. But he was not successful. Jehangir went in hot pursuit of him. The royal forces defeated Prince Khusro who fled towards Kabul. But as he was crossing the Chenab near Sodhra he was captured and put in prison. His followers were severely punished. The Sikh Guru Arjan Dev who had helped the prince had to pay it with his life. (Khusro is said to have

been assassinated in 1622 at the instance of Prince Khurram i.e. Shah Jehan).

 **Marriage with Nur Jehan.** In 1611 Jehangir married a beautiful Iranian lady Nur Jehan. Her first name was Mehr-ul-Nisa, but after she became queen, she came to be called Nur Mahal and later on Nur Jehan.

Nur Jehan was the daughter of Mirza Ghias Beg of Tehran. This man was on his way to India to seek fortune when near Kandhar this daughter was born to him. Her parents had no means to support this child, so they left her there. In the same caravan, a rich merchant (named Malik Masud) took up that girl and engaged her mother to nourish her. When he arrived in India, Mirza Ghias got a job in Akbar's court. In her childhood Nur Jehan often visited the royal palaces along with her mother. Here Jehangir fell in love with her. At this Akbar got her married to an Afghan chief, Ali Quli Khan (Sher Afgan) whom he made governor of Burdwan. Shortly after Jehangir came to the throne, Sher Afgan was killed in a scuffle and Nur Jehan was sent to the royal palaces. For about four years she repelled all the advances of the king, but was at last persuaded to marry him in 1611.

**Nur Jehan's Character.** Nur Jehan was a very wise and accomplished lady. She was fond of poetry and composed fine verses. She possessed considerable courage and strength and took delight in hunting expeditions. On several occasions she shot tigers. She was very generous, too. She defrayed the marriage expenses of several poor and orphan Muslim girls. She was devotedly loyal to her husband and had a great regard for her own relatives also.

**Nur Jehan's Influence.** As soon as she married Jehangir, she completely dominated him and took all the management of affairs in her own hands. Her name was joined to that of Jehangir on the coinage. She conferred high titles on her father and brother and appointed them to high posts. Nur Jehan ruled very wisely. She also tried to reform the bad habits of her husband. But her power ceased at the death of the king. Shah Jehan settled a decent pension on her and she took up her abode at Lahore. In 1645 she died and

was buried at Shahdara, near Lahore.

**Jehangir's Campaigns.** 1. *War with Mewar.* Rana Partap was succeeded to the gaddi of Mewar by his son Amar Singh. He refused to submit to Jehangir. Jehangir sent several expeditions against him, but without success. At last in 1614 Prince Khurram defeated him and he made his submission. Jehangir was very proud of this success because even Akbar had failed to bring this dynasty to its knees.

2. *Conquest of Kangra.* In 1620 Khurram conquered Kangra. Jehangir was very proud of this conquest also since Akbar could not conquer this fort too.

3. *War with Ahmadnagar.* Ahmadnagar which had been conquered during the reign of Akbar declared its independence in 1610 under Malik Ambar, a minister of the Nizam Shahi dynasty. Jehangir sent his son Prince Khurram to reduce the kingdom. Ahmadnagar fell but the Mughals could not establish their rule there.

4. *Loss of Kandhar.* Kandhar had been conquered by Akbar. But in 1622 (Shah Abbas) the king of Iran recovered it and the city was lost to the Mughal empire.

**Hawkins and Sir Thomas Roe.** Captain William Hawkins was sent to India by James I King of England. He reached here in 1608. His object was to obtain some trade concessions. He succeeded in obtaining permission from Jehangir to set up a trading factory at Surat. But owing to the intrigues of the Portuguese this permission was cancelled.

Sir Thomas Roe was an English ambassador sent by King James I of England to the court of Jehangir. He arrived at Agra in 1615. He was a capable and astute politician. His object was to secure some privileges for the English East India Company. He stayed here three years, and succeeded in securing some concessions. The English obtained permission to open a factory at Surat. He wrote an account of his experiences in India. He writes: "The court is magnificent and meetings for merry-making are frequent. The country is very rich and foreigners are very well treated. The administration is not very efficient. Bribery is common. The roads are not quite safe."



Aurangzeb's general pursued him as far as Arakan and then nothing further is known about him.

Now the fugitive Dara was hotly pursued. He took refuge with Malik Jiwan, the ruler of Dadar in Sind who, however, played him false and surrendered him to Aurangzeb. Dara dressed in rags and mounted on a mean looking elephant, was paraded through the city of Delhi. Then he was declared a *kafir* (an infidel) and done to death. Thus Aurangzeb secured the throne of his father.

**Causes of Aurangzeb's Success.** The following were the causes of Aurangzeb's success in this war of succession :—

1. Aurangzeb was a capable and experienced general. He never gave way to despair. His army was well organised and loyal. On the other hand, Dara's generals proved traitors.

2. Aurangzeb was a staunch Sunni, hence the Sunni party at the Court who were in power supported him. These people were against Dara whom they thought to be a *kafir*.

3. Aurangzeb made his brother Murad a tool of his designs. Afterwards he won over his army by means of bribes and literal promises.

4. To some extent Aurangzeb's success seems to be due to the fact that Shah Jehan did not turn up at the field of Samugarh. He had recovered by that time and his presence would possibly have put an end to the fight.

## CHAPTER XIII

### AURANGZEB ALAMGIR

#### 1658—1707

**Q.** Give a brief account of the reign of Aurangzeb with special reference to his Deccan campaigns. Also describe his character and religious policy.

[P.U. 1926-36-41-42].

**The Period of his Reign.** Aurangzeb was the last great emperor of the Mughal dynasty. He was about forty

when he came to the throne. He ruled about 50 years—from 1658 to 1707. His reign can be divided into two periods each of about 24 or 25 years.

**I. 1658—1681.** This period Aurangzeb passed in Northern India and did not pay any special attention to the Deccan.

**II. 1682—1707.** This period Aurangzeb spent in the Deccan fighting against the Shia states of Bijapur and Golkonda and the Marathas.

### Events in Northern India, 1658—1681.

The important events of this period were :—

**1. Invasion of Assam, 1661–63.** Mir Jumla, the governor of Bengal, invaded Assam, because the raja of that place had captured some Mughal territory. The roads were difficult and Mir Jumla himself got malaria and so this expedition was not a success. On his return Mir Jumla died near Dacca in 1663.


**2. Conquest of Arakan, 1666.** After the death of Mir Jumla, Aurangzeb's maternal uncle Shaista Khan was appointed governor of Bengal. He defeated the Raja of Arakan and annexed Chittagong.

**3. War with Sivaji, 1663—1680.** Sivaji, the Maratha chief, captured some Mughal territory. Shaista Khan (who was the governor of the Deccan) was sent against him. But Sivaji made a night attack on him at Poona and defeated him. Now first Prince Muazzam and then Raja Jai Singh were sent against him. Sivaji submitted on certain conditions and came to Agra. Here he was imprisoned. He cleverly escaped and succeeded in reaching the Deccan. Sivaji continued his wars against the Mughals and won back several of his forts. At last he died in 1680.

**4. Rebellion of Jats, 1669.** Many Jats lived in the neighbourhood of Muttra. They were brave and hardy people. The religious policy of Aurangzeb displeased them very much. So in 1669 they rose in revolt under their leader Gokal Jat. The rebellion was put down. But the Jats gave trouble to Aurangzeb throughout his reign.

5. **Revolt of Satnamis, 1672.** Satnamis were a sect of Hindus. They lived at Narnaul (in the present Patiala State) near Delhi and numbered about four or five thousand. They were religious people but carried on a little agriculture also. In 1672 they revolted, because a government tax-collector had insulted one of them. Aurangzeb sent an army against them. The Satnamis won some victories in the beginning but at last they were practically exterminated.

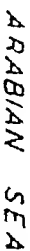
6. **War with the Rajputs, 1679—81.** Raja Jaswant Singh of Marwar (Jodhpur) who was governor of Kabul died in 1678. Aurangzeb detained his minor sons at Delhi for some reasons. But the brave Rajput chief Durga Das Rathor succeeded in rescuing them. This action of the king made the Rajputs very angry. Besides in 1679 the *jizya* was reimposed, which enraged them still more. At last war began between the Rajputs and the Mughals. Marwar and Mewar joined forces. Aurangzeb sent his son Akbar against the Rajputs but he went over to them. Now the king wrote a letter to him and so contrived that it should fall into the hands of the Rajputs. This letter made the Rajputs suspicious of the intentions of Akbar who, poor fellow, had to fly to Iran. Peace was made at last in 1681, but one result of the war was that *the Rajputs became henceforward the most determined enemies of the Mughal empire.* Aurangzeb had to fight his Daccan wars without their whole-hearted help.

 **Deccan Campaigns, 1682 - 1707—**After making peace with the Rajputs Aurangzeb set out for the Deccan in 1681 and spent the last 26 years of his life there. He was not destined to come back to Delhi. He had *two* objects in going to the Deccan. In the *first place* he wanted to conquer the Shia states of Bijapur and Golkonda, and *secondly* he wanted to crush the growing Maratha power.

1. **Conquest of Bijapur and Golkonda.** The rulers of both these states were Shias and as Aurangzeb was a staunch Sunni he wanted to overthrow these states.

At first Aurangzeb sent his son Azam to conquer Bijapur but he did not meet with any success. Aurangzeb, therefore, went there in person, and after a siege of about a

## 1707



BAY OF  
BENGAL

year he conquered Bijapur in 1686. Its ruler (Sikander) was pensioned off and Bijapur was annexed to the Mughal Empire.

In 1687. Golkonda was besieged. Abul Hasan the king was a dissolute prince of effeminate habits, but when war was forced upon him, he fought like a hero and inflicted heavy losses on Aurangzeb's army. The fort was most gallantly defended by a brave general Abdul Razzak. At last when all hope of success was lost Aurangzeb bribed the guard of the fort who opened the gate. Abdul Razzak fought like a giant but was severely wounded and taken prisoner. Golkonda was conquered.

This conquest of the Deccan states increased the power of the Marathas who now began to plunder Mughal territories more boldly than ever.

2. War with the Marathas. After the conquest of Bijapur and Golkonda Aurangzeb turned his attention to the Marathas, and was engaged in warfare with them for about 20 years, but the guerrilla tactics of the Marathas did not let him achieve any success. Sivaji had died by this time. His son *Sambhaji* who succeeded him was worthless and dissolute. In 1689 Sambhaji was put to death by the Mughals and his son Sahu was captured. But the Marathas continued to fight under *Raja Ram*, the younger brother of Sambhaji. When Raja Ram died (1700) his widow *Tara Bai*, a very intelligent and gallant lady, took up their leadership and continued the war. Aurangzeb had to return in disappointment, exhausted and broken hearted and died at Ahmadnagar in 1707. He was buried at Khuldabad near Daulatabad.

The Deccan campaigns proved very harmful to the Mughal empire. Continued warfare weakened the army as well as the financial condition. In northern India the Sikhs and Jats rose in revolt and the governors of provinces did not care much for the central power.

*Note :—*There were two main reasons why Aurangzeb could not crush the Maratha power, 1. The Mughal army had not only become weak and ease-loving but was also quite disorganised. 2. The Marathas never fought in the open. They remained concealed in their mountains whenever they got an opportunity they swooped down upon the enemy and plundered his provisions.

**Aurangzeb's Character.** The most remarkable trait in Aurangzeb's character was that he was a staunch Sunni and a strict follower of the *Shariat*. His private life was ideally simple. He thought it a sin to use a single pie for his own use out of the government treasury, and earned his living by making caps and copying the Koran. He simply hated music. He was a conscientious ruler and an experienced general. He personally attended to every detail of administration. He was also a great scholar. But his was a very suspicious temperament. He did not trust even his own children. His religious policy made the Hindus and especially the Rajputs his enemies.

**Religious Policy.** Aurangzeb was a staunch Sunni Muslim. He had a deep devotion for Islam and he regulated his life according to the Koranic injunctions. For this reason his treatment of his Hindu subjects was far from proper. He pulled down several Hindu temples, he closed the doors of government service against them and made it unlawful for them to ride in *pulkies* or on Arab horses. In 1679 he reimposed the *jizya* which Akbar had abolished in 1554.

Aurangzeb was opposed to Shiaism too. One of the reasons why he destroyed the Muslim states of the Deccan was that their rulers were Shias and their ministers were Hindus.

The religious policy of Aurangzeb proved very harmful to the empire.

**Q.** What were the causes of Aurangzeb's failure as a king ?

**Causes of Aurangzeb's failure.** Outwardly Aurangzeb was a very successful king. In northern India he achieved success in every campaign. He annexed the Deccan kingdoms of Bijapur and Golkonda and although he could not crush the Marathas, they, too did not achieve any notable success against him. His empire extended over nearly the whole of India, and was vaster than that of any of his predecessors. No power in India was a match for the Mughal power. In spite of all this the fact remains that as a king Aurangzeb proved a failure, and the decline of the

year he conquered Bijapur in 1686. Its ruler (Sikander) was pensioned off and Bijapur was annexed to the Mughal Empire.

In 1687. Golkonda was besieged. Abul Hasan the king was a dissolute prince of effeminate habits, but when war was forced upon him, he fought like a hero and inflicted heavy losses on Aurangzeb's army. The fort was most gallantly defended by a brave general Abdul Razzak. At last when all hope of success was lost Aurangzeb bribed the guard of the fort who opened the gate. Abdul Razzak fought like a giant but was severely wounded and taken prisoner. Golkonda was conquered.

This conquest of the Deccan states increased the power of the Marathas who now began to plunder Mughal territories more boldly than ever.

2. War with the Marathas. After the conquest of Bijapur and Golkonda Aurangzeb turned his attention to the Marathas, and was engaged in warfare with them for about 20 years, but the guerrilla tactics of the Marathas did not let him achieve any success. Sivaji had died by this time. His son *Sambhaji* who succeeded him was worthless and dissolute. In 1689 Sambhaji was put to death by the Mughals and his son Sahu was captured. But the Marathas continued to fight under *Raja Ram*, the younger brother of Sambhaji. When Raja Ram died (1700) his widow *Tara Bai*, a very intelligent and gallant lady, took up their leadership and continued the war. Aurangzeb had to return in disappointment, exhausted and broken hearted and died at Ahmadnagar in 1707. He was buried at Khuldabad near Daulatabad.

The Deccan campaigns proved very harmful to the Mughal empire. Continued warfare weakened the army as well as the financial condition. In northern India the Sikhs and Jats rose in revolt and the governors of provinces did not care much for the central power.

*Note :—*There were two main reasons why Aurangzeb could not crush the Maratha power. 1. The Mughal army had not only become weak and ease-loving but was also quite disorganised. 2. The Marathas never fought in the open. They remained concealed in their mountains whenever they got an opportunity they swooped down upon the enemy and plundered his provisions.





Mughal power began *during his reign*. The causes of this failure were the following :—

1. Religious policy. Aurangzeb was a staunch Muslim. He did not employ Hindus in Government service, he pulled down their temples and imposed *jizya* on them, with the result that the Hindus began to sympathise with his enemies, the Sikhs and the Marathas. Moreover the brave Rajputs who since the time of Akbar had been the faithful allies of the Mughal dynasty became its implacable enemies. Aurangzeb had to fight the Deccan wars without their whole-hearted support.

2. Conquest of Bijapur and Golkonda. Aurangzeb committed a political blunder in annexing these two states, since they strengthened the hands of the Marathas. The disbanded soldiers of these states swelled the Maratha armies.

3. The Deccan Campaigns. Aurangzeb's ceaseless wars in the Deccan not only depleted the treasury, but also disorganised the government. The Sikhs, in the meantime, got an opportunity to increase their power.

4. Suspicious Nature. Aurangzeb was of a very suspicious nature. He did not trust even his own sons. The result was that even his most trusted officers were disappointed and nobody could serve him faithfully or wholeheartedly. The administrative system was weakened. Not one of his sons received any training in the art of Government.

Q. Write notes on :—

Ali Mardan Khan, Mir Jumla, Shaista Khan, Jizya.

Ali Mardan Khan. Ali Mardan Khan was the Persian governor of Kandhar. For some reasons he was afraid of his master, the Shah of Iran. He, therefore, made over the fort to Shah Jehan. Shah Jehan appointed him to a high post. He was, for sometime, the governor of Kashmir as well as of Kabul. He was a skilled engineer. The famous Shalamar Gardens of Lahore and the Jumna Canal were designed by him.

**Mir Jumla.** Mir jumla was a jewel merchant of Iran who came to Golkonda for trade. By dint of ability he rose to be Prime Minister of the king. Afterwards he took up service with Shah Jehan. In the war of succession he helped Aurangzeb a great deal. He defeated Shuja and compelled him to fly to Arakan. He was, then, appointed Governor of Bengal by Aurangzeb. In 1663 Mir Jumla led an army against Assam, but this campaign shattered his health and he died near Dacca.

**Shaista Khan.** Shaista Khan was the maternal uncle of Aurangzeb. For a time he was governor of the Deccan. Aurangzeb sent him to chastise Siviji, but he did not meet with success. In 1664 he was made governor of Bengal where he ruled very ably for about thirty years. He drove away the pirates from Chirtagong and defeated the king of Arakan.

**Jizya.** Jizya was a tax which Muslim kings levied on their non-Muslim subjects. In the beginning the Brahmans were exempted from the payment of jizya, but Feroz Tughlak imposed it on Brahmans as well. Akbar abolished it in 1564 but Aurangzeb reimposed it in 1679. Several Hindus embraced Islam to escape jizya.

---

## CHAPTER XIV

### THE RISE OF THE MARATHAS


#### Sivaji

**Q.** What do you know of the Marathas and their country ?

**The Marathas.** The Marathas are natives of Maharashtra. This country is, for the most part, covered with mountains and forests. The surface is uneven and the routes are intricate. These physical features have played a great part in making the Marathas brave, warlike and simple in their habits. The hill forts of this country have proved very useful to the Marathas. They could successfully defy

their enemies on account of these forts. They took shelter in these forts and whenever they got an opportunity they swooped down on their enemies.

The Marathas were short in stature, well-built and hardy. For a long time they were under the Deccan Sultans as their tributaries. But the religious movements of the day inspired in them love for their country, nation and religion. At last Sivaji freed them from the Muslim yoke and made them a powerful nation.

 **Q.** Give a brief account of the career and character of Sivaji and write a note on his administration.  
(Very Important) (P. U. 1914-18-23-30-33)

**Sivaji.** Sivaji was born in 1627 (10th April) at the hill fortress of Shivner, about fifty miles from Poona. Shahji Bhonsla, the father of Sivaji was a high official in the state of Bijapur and he owned the territory of Poona as a *jagir*. Jijabai, the mother of Sivaji, was a pious and sagacious woman.

Sivaji was brought up at Poona under the careful supervision of his mother. This pious woman fed Sivaji on the stories of the ancient Hindu heroes and infused in him a spirit to defend his nation and religion. When Sivaji grew up, Dadaji Kondadev, the manager of Shahji's estates at Poona, was appointed his tutor. He made Sivaji an expert soldier as well as an efficient administrator. The writings of the religious reformers of Maharashtra and his contact with Ramdas a good religious preacher whom he accepted as his a spiritual guru inspired Sivaji with boundless zeal for Hindu religion. The result of all this was that Sivaji made up his mind to weld the Marathas into one nationality and to free his country from the Muslim yoke.

**Early Conquests.** At the age of nineteen Sivaji captured the fort of Torna (20 miles south west of Poona). Shortly after he captured some other forts *Raigarh*, *Panaji*, *Panaji* etc. The Sultan of Bijapur was very alarmed and he sent his father Shahji in prison. But Sivaji effected his release through the intercession of Shah Jehan. After this Sivaji gave up his raids for a few years and consolidated his resources.

**War with Bijapur.** After sometime Sivaji again began to raid the Bijapur territory. At last in 1659 the Sultan of Bijapur sent his general *Afzal Khan* to chastise Sivaji. Both of them agreed to an interview. But both of them had lurking suspicions of each other's intentions. The conflict began as soon as they embraced each other. Sivaji slew Afzal Khan with his *bichhwa*, and his army was attacked and routed. This happened near Partapgarh fort. After this the Sultan sent a few more expeditions, but without any success. At last in 1662 the king of Bijapur made peace with Sivaji and acknowledged him independent king of his conquered territories.

**War with the Mughals.** Sivaji's success against Afzal Khan encouraged him still more and he began to ravage the Mughal territories. At this Aurangzeb sent his maternal uncle *Shaista Khan* against him. Shaista Khan captured Poona and spent sometime in desultory warfare. One night Sivaji entered the city with 400 brave Maratha soldiers disguised as a marriage party and attacked the Mughals. A great many Mughal soldiers were killed. Shaista Khan himself barely escaped with his life, but his son (Abdul Fateh) was slain. Next year i.e., in 1664 Sivaji plundered Surat and carried off immense booty.

After the failure of Shaista Khan Aurangzeb sent first prince Muazzam and at his failure Raja Jai Singh against Sivaji. Raja Jai Singh won a few victories and persuaded Sivaji (after he had been besieged in the fort of Purandhar) to make his submission to Aurangzeb and present himself at his court at Agra. But when Sivaji attended the court he was treated with discourtesy. When he reached his lodging he found himself a prisoner. But he cleverly made his escape by concealing himself in a sweets basket and succeeded in reaching the Deccan (1666). Henceforward he was an implacable enemy of the Mughal empire.

**Coronation of Sivaji.** After his return from Agra Sivaji conquered several forts. In 1670 he plundered Surat second time. In 1674 he made Raigarh his capital and celebrated his coronation with great pomp and show. Shortly

country where they knew every inch of ground. This method of warfare is called guerilla warfare.

## CHAPTER XV

### SUCCESSORS OF AURANGZEB AND THE DECLINE OF THE MUGHAL EMPIRE


**Successors of Aurangzeb** After the death of Aurangzeb there was a war of succession among his sons. In this war Prince Muazzam came out successful and he ascended the throne (1707) under the title of **Bahadur Shah**. He was so old and inefficient that he was called the 'heedless king' (Shah-i-bekhabar). He ruled from 1707 to 1712.

The death of Bahadur Shah was followed by another war of succession. Now Jehandar Shah came out successful. During his reign two Sayyad brothers *Hussain Ali* and *Abdulla* became very powerful. In 1713 they got Jehandar Shah murdered and put his nephew Farrukh Sayyar on the throne.


**Farrukh Sayyar** ruled from 1712 to 1719. The most important event of his reign was that Banda Bahadur, the leader of the Sikhs, was captured and put to death. The Sayyad Brothers wanted to make Farrukh Sayyar merely a tool in their hands and when he tried to throw off their yoke, they got him murdered too. After a few puppet kings they raised one Muhammad Shah to the throne.

**Muhammad Shah** ruled from 1719 to 1748. He was a debauched prince who spent his time in merry-making. He was for this reason called Muhammad Shah *Rangila* (or the merry monarch). During his reign several provinces declared their independence and the Mughal empire began to disrupt. In 1739 the invasion of Nadir Shah dealt it a death blow. Ali Verdi Khan became independent in Bengal, Saadat Ali Khan in Oudh and Nizam-ul-Mulk in the Deccan.

The successors of Muhammad Shah were kings only in name. Only two of them deserve notice. 1. Shah Allām II\* who granted the Diwani of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa to the English. 2. Bahadur Shah II who was the last king of the line. He took part in the Mutiny of 1857 and was sent as a state prisoner to Rangoon where he died in 1862.

 Q. Write a note on the Sayyad Brothers. (Imp.)

**Sayyad Brothers.** They were two brothers, one of them was named Sayyad Hussain Ali Khan and the other Sayyad Abdulla Khan. Hussain Ali was the governor of Bihar and Abdullah of Allahabad. After the death of Aurangzeb, both these brothers increased their power and influence to such an extent that they made and unmade kings. If they did not like a king they either got him murdered or deposed him. Within a few years they made and unmade several kings so that they are called 'King makers' in Indian History. Both of them were put to death during the reign of Muhammad Shah.

 Q. Briefly describe the invasions of Nadir Shah and Ahmad Shah Abdali and estimate their importance. (Very Important)

**Invasion of Nadir Shah, 1739.** Nadir Shah was one of the greatest conquerors of Iran. Originally he was a shepherd of Khurasan, but by dint of God-given abilities he rose to be the king of Iran. Two years after this he conquered Qandhar and then determined upon the invasion of India. The excuse for it came quickly enough. Many Afghans fleeing from Qandhar had taken refuge in India. Nadir Shah sent an envoy to Mohammad Shah requesting him not to allow these Afghans to enter his territory. But Mohammad Shah sent no reply. So in 1739 Nadir Shah invaded the country and came as far as *Karnal* without any opposition. Here he defeated the army of Muhammad Shah. After this he entered Delhi. A few days later, a rumour spread in the city that Nadir Shah had been assassinated. At this the inhabitants of Delhi slew some of his soldiers.

---

\*He is called Shah Alam II because Bahadur Shah was also called Shah Alam.

8. **Independence of Provinces.** After the death of Aurangzeb when no capable ruler came to the throne, the governors of provinces declared their independence. Ali Verdi Khan in Bengal, Saadat Ali Khan in Oudh and Nizam ul-Mulk in the Deccan all became independent in the reign of Muhammad Shah *Rangila*.

9. **Foreign Invasions.** Taking advantage of this weakness of the empire Nadir Shah and Ahmad Shah Abdali made invasions which weakened the empire still further.

10. **The extent of the Empire.** During the reign of Aurangzeb the empire had grown very vast. In those days when means of transport and communication were far from satisfactory, it was a difficult job to keep order in such a vast empire. The extent of the empire, therefore, proved a cause of its weakness.

11. **New Powers.** The Marathas and the Sikhs were increasing their power very fast. The Marathas starting from the Deccan spread over Northern India and the Sikhs captured the Punjab. Besides, many European nations, too, obtained a firm footing in the country. All this led to the rapid disintegration of the Mughal empire.

---

## CHAPTER XVI


### RISE OF THE SIKHS

**Q.** Give an account of the Sikhs emphasising the work of Guru Nanak and Guru Gobind Singh. (P. U. 1918-23)

**Rise of the Sikh.** Guru Nanak, 1469—1538. The founder of the Sikh faith was Guru Nanak Dev who was born in 1469 at Talwandi (now called Nankana Sahib) in the district of Sheikhupura. His father Kalu was a Patwar as well as a petty shopkeeper. From childhood Guru Nanak was given to deep thinking and at the age of thirty he became a *Sadhu*. He travelled about the whole of India preaching and is even said to have gone to Arabia. During the closing years of his life he took up his residence at

Kartarpur and died there in 1538 at the age of 70. He preached the unity of God and condemned the Caste System, idol worship, claims of Brahmans and meaningless religious rites. His followers came to be called Sikhs (from Sanskrit *Shishya* meaning a disciple). He was followed by nine Gurus.

The second Guru Angad Dev introduced the Gurmukhi characters and wrote the biography of Guru Nanak Dev in that script. The third guru was Amar Das who organised regular preachers to preach his religion and introduced the system of *langar* (dining together). The fourth Guru was Ram Das who built the sacred tank and founded the city of Amritsar. This city and especially the tank became later the place of pilgrimage for the Sikhs. The fifth Guru was Arjan Dev who built the Har Mandir at Amritsar and compiled the Granth Sahib. Now the Sikhs were an organised body because they had their own script (Gurmukhi), a *sacred place of pilgrimage* (Amritsar) and a *scripture* (the Granth Sahib). In 1605 Guru Arjan Dev had to lose his life because he helped Khusro, the rebel son of Jehangir. Now the Sikhs became the enemies of the Mughal empire. The martyrdom of Guru Arjan Dev transformed the peaceful Sikhs into a military brotherhood. The sixth Guru Har Gobind was the first guru who found it necessary to train the Sikhs in the military arts. Jehangir kept him a prisoner for some years in the fort of Gwalior. After his release he fought several wars with the Mughals and even gained some victories. The seventh Guru was Har Rai and the eighth was Har Kishan who died, while yet a child, of small-pox. The ninth guru was Guru Teg Bahadur who was put to death at Delhi under the orders of Aurangzeb.

 Guru Gobind Singh, 1660–1708. The tenth and last guru of the Sikhs was Guru Gobind Singh. He was the real founder of the Sikh power. He transformed the sect altogether. He was born at Patna in 1660 and on the death of his father he succeeded to the *gaddi* at the age of 15 (1675). The next twenty years he spent in consolidating his resources. He reorganised the sect. It now became incumbent on all Sikhs to undergo the ceremony of *Amrit* and to adopt five k's as their distinguishing marks. These five k's were :



(i) *Kesh* (long hair), (ii) *Kaccha* (short breeches), (iii) *Kara* (an iron bangle), (iv) *Kirpan* (a small dagger) and (v) *Kangha* (a comb). Now they came to be called Singhs or Lions instead of Sikhs or disciples and the community came to be called the Khalsa. Thus *Guru Gobind Singh transformed the religious sect of the Sikhs into a military band*. *Guru Gobind Singh* passed the major part of his life fighting against the Mughals. In these battles his four sons and several loyal Sikhs were killed, but the Guru did not bend his knee to the emperor. At last Aurangzeb summoned him to the Deccan, but before he arrived there the emperor had died. In 1708 *Guru Gobind Singh* suffered martyrdom at *Apchalnagar (Nander)* in the Deccan. This place is now called *Sri Hazur Sahib*. Before he died *Guru Gobind Singh* appointed one *Banda Bairagi* the leader of the Sikhs.

**Banda Bairagi.** The original name of *Banda Bairagi* (also called *Banda Bahadur*) was *Lachhman Dev*. He was a Rajput by caste and a native of *Rajauri* in *Poonch*. In his youth he became a *Bairagi* and used to live on the bank of the *Godavari*. When *Guru Gobind Singh* went to the Deccan, he met the *Bairagi* there and advised him to take up the duties of a *Kshatriya* once again, and appointed him the military leader of Sikhs. *Banda Bairagi* came to the Punjab and collecting a large number of Sikhs began to plunder the Mughal territories. He devastated *Sarhind* (between the *Jumna* and the *Sutlej*) and shed rivers of blood. He, then, wanted to make some changes in the Sikh religion. At this a large number of Sikhs turned against him. At last in 1716 during the reign of *Farrukh Sayyar*, *Banda* was captured along with 800 companions and was tortured to death.

**Twelve Misls.** After the execution of *Banda*, Sikhs had no leader, and the Muslim governor of the Punjab took strong measures against them. For a time the Sikhs had to take refuge in hills and forests. But even then they were on the look out for an opportunity. So that when the invasions of *Nadir Shah* (1739) and *Ahmad Shah Abdali* (1756) caused anarchy in the Punjab, the Sikhs came out of their fastnesses and settled in the plains. Here they organised themselves into bands and carried on warfare with the rulers. These bands were called *misls*. Every *misl* was

under a leader or *Jathedar*. These misls captured a large territory in the Punjab and established several independent states. They sometimes fought with each other but when the occasion arose they all combined against the Muslims. The leader of one of those misls was Charat Singh. His grandson *Ranjit Singh* defeated all the other misls and established a monarchy in the Punjab which will be described later on.

*Note* :—These misls were named (1) Ahluwalia (2) Bhangi (3) Kanhya (4) Sukhar Chakia (5) Ramgarhia (6) Nakai (7) Phulkian (Singhpuria) (8) Karor Singhia (9) Nishania (10) Dalewalia and (12) Shahidi.

## CHAPTER XVII

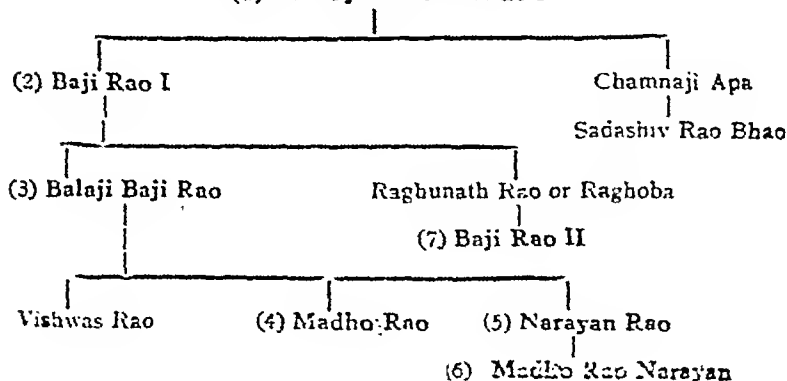
### RISE OF THE PESHWAS

**Q.** Who were the Peshwas? What led to their rise to power?

**Rise of the Peshwas.** The Prime Minister of the Maratha state was called the Peshwa. But in the reign of Sahu, the grandson of Sivaji Peshwas became the virtual rulers of the kingdom. The reason was that Sahu, on account of his long captivity and luxurious upbringing, had become ease-loving and incompetent and had no capacity to carry on the work of government. He, therefore, entrusted the reins of government to his Prime Minister or Peshwa Balaji Vishwanath in 1714. Now began the rule of the Peshwas which lasted from 1714 to 1818, that is, about 100 years. There were altogether seven Peshwas. Poona was their capital.


### GENEALOGY OF THE PESHWAS

#### (1) Balaji Vishwanath



Names of the Peshwas. (1) Balaji Vishwanath (1714—20), (2) Baji Rao I (1720—40), (3) Balaji Baji Rao (1740—61), (4) Madho Rao (1761—72), (5) Narayan Rao (1772—73), (6) Madho Rao Narayan (1773—95), (7) Baji Rao II (1796—1818).

Of these Peshwa Baji Rao I was the ablest and Baji Rao II the weakest and most incompetent.

 Q. Trace the growth of the Maratha power under the first three Peshwas. (Important) (P. U. 1912-17-31-32)

1. Balaji Vishwanath, 1714—1720. Balaji Vishwanath was the founder of the Peshwa dynasty. He was a statesman of great ability. He organised the Maratha state by introducing many reforms. He made the office of the Peshwa hereditary. The most important event of his rule is his help to the Sayyad Brothers. The Sayyad Brothers (also known as king-makers) called him to Delhi for help, and thus succeeded in deposing Farrukh Sayyar. In return the Marathas obtained the rights of collecting chauth and sardeshmukhi in the six provinces of the Deccan. *In this way the Maratha influence spread over the whole of the Deccan.* Balaji Vishwanath improved the financial condition of the state also. In order to bind the Maratha chiefs into a closer union he introduced a new scheme. He allowed these chiefs to retain  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the chauth they collected and to send only  $\frac{1}{3}$  to the Peshwa. In the beginning this system worked well but later on it proved one of the causes of the downfall of the Marathas. In 1720 Balaji Vishwanath died.

2. Baji Rao I, 1720-1740. Balaji Vishwanath was succeeded by his son Baji Rao. He was a fine soldier. On account of his bravery and diplomatic skill he is regarded as the ablest of the Peshwas. His father tried to consolidate the Maratha power in the Deccan, Baji Rao wanted to establish it in Northern India. His policy was to strike at the very heart of the Mughal power. He once said to Sahu, "Let us strike at the trunk and the withered branches will fall of themselves." *During his rule the Marathas conquered Gujarat, Malwa and Bundelkhand and advanced as far as Delhi.* Nizam-ul-Mulk came from the Deccan at the head of a large army to help the Mughal emperor but the


Marathas defeated him near Bhopal. Baji Rao I even captured the island of Bassein from the Portuguese. Thus the Maratha power extended far and wide.

**Maratha Confederacy.** During the reign of Baji Rao I some Maratha chiefs who collected chauth and sardeshmukhi became very powerful and became virtually independent in their own territories (1) Raghoji Bhonsla in Nagpur (2) Pillaji Gaekwar in Baroda (3) Malhar Rao Holkar in Indor and (4) Ranoji Sindhia in Gwalior all established their own states. The Peshwa organised them all into a group. This group is called the Maratha Confederacy. The Peshwa was the head of this confederacy.

In 1740 Baji Rai died.

3. **Balaji Baji Rao, 1740-1761.** Baji Rao was succeeded by his son Balaji Baji Rao. *During his rule the Maratha power was at the zenith of its glory.* The Maratha chiefs were conquering new territories on all sides. Raghoji Bhonsla overran Central India and led several expeditions against Bengal. At this Ali Verdi Khan, the Nawab of Bengal, ceded to him the province of Orissa, and agreed to pay chauth and sardeshmukhi for the province of Bihar and Bengal. In 1758 Raghunath Rao (also called Raghoba), the brother of the Peshwa captured the Punjab and drove out Timur, the son and viceroy of Ahmad Shah Abdali. The *gerua flag* of the Marathas now waved proudly over the fort of Attock. *Thus during the reign of the third Peshwa, the Maratha power extended from one end of India to the other and they collected chauth and sardeshmukhi from the territories not under their direct control.*

But just at this time when the Marathas were masters of nearly the whole of India Ahmad Shah Abdali inflicted a crushing defeat on them in the third battle of Panipat. This was a severe blow to the Maratha power and the Peshwa died of the shock (1761).

 Q. State concisely the causes, main events and effects of the third Battle of Panipat. (Very Important).  
(P. U 1939)


The Third Battle of Panipat, 1761. This battle was fought between Ahmad Shah Abdali, the king of Afghanistan and the Marathas.

**Cause.** The chief cause of this battle was that the Marathas under Raghunath Rao (Raghoba) the brother of the third Peshwa had captured the Punjab which was included in the dominion of Ahmad Shah Abdali, and had driven out his viceroy. Ahmad Shah Abdali, therefore, advanced against them at the head of a strong force. In 1761 a fierce battle was fought at the historic field of Panipat.

**Events.** The commander of the Maratha forces was Sadashiv Rao (the Bhao Saheb) a cousin of the Peshwa and his deputy was Vishwas Rao, the son of the Peshwa. Bhao was no doubt a very able man but he was haughty and imperious. He was advised by several experienced soldiers including Suraj Mal, the Jat chieftain of Bharatpur not to fight a pitched battle but to adopt guerrilla warfare. But he paid no heed to the expert advice. At this Suraj Mal went back with his army. For a time both the armies lay facing each other. Ahmad Shah Abdali cut off the line of communication of the Marathas, so that their provisions gave out. At this the Marathas were compelled to make a charge. There was a fierce and desperate battle, but the Marathas who were not accustomed to fight in an open field were badly defeated. Sadashiv Rao and the Peshwa's son Vishwas Rao both fell and several able generals and innumerable Maratha soldiers lay dead on the field. Sindhia was wounded in the leg and he fled from the field. This dreadful news gave such a shock to the Peshwa that he died of a broken heart six months later at Poona.

**Results.** 1. This defeat put an end to the Maratha power and influence for sometime, and their hopes of establishing an India-wide empire were dashed to the ground.

2. The English now got an opportunity of increasing their own power, since their rivals, the Marathas had been weakened.

 **Q.** Why has Panipat been an important battlefield in Indian History? Briefly describe the three battles of Panipat and discuss their importance. (Important)

**Panipat, the Battlefield.** Delhi was for long the capital of strong empires, and in order to conquer Delhi, a battle must be fought somewhere near Delhi. The plain of Panipat

is near Delhi and lies on the nearest route to Delhi. For this reason the fate of India has so often been decided there.

*Note* :—It should be borne in mind that besides Panipat battles have been fought at other places near Delhi e. g , Kurukshetra (Thanesar), Tarain and Karnal.

**The Battles of Panipat.** Three important battles have been fought at the historic plain of Panipat

1. **The first Battle of Panipat.** This battle was fought between Babur and Ibrahim Lodhi in 1526. Babur was victorious and Ibrahim was killed. The most important result of this battle was that the empire of Delhi passed from the hands of the Pathans to those of the Mughals who were then foreign invaders *and thus the Mughal rule began in India.*

2. **The second Battle of Panipat.** This battle was fought in 1556 between Hemu and Akbar's army. Hemu was defeated, captured and put to death. The result was that *the Mughal empire was established a second time.*

3. **The third Battle of Panipat.** This battle was fought in 1761 between Ahmad Shah Abdali and the Marathas. The Marathas were badly defeated. This battle is more important than the first two battles of Panipat, because as a result of this battle *the Maratha power was weakened and the English succeeded in securing a firm footing in India.* Had the Marathas been victorious in this battle, possibly the English would not have been able to establish an empire here.

**Note.** For a detailed description of the three battles of Panipat see pages 111, 121 and 166.

---

# THE BRITISH PERIOD

## CHAPTER I

### THE COMING OF THE EUROPEANS

India had been in trade relations with Europe from very early times. One of the main trade routes in those days was by way of the Red Sea. Indian goods were taken by Arab merchants as far as Alexandria in Egypt from where European merchants shipped them to Europe. But in the fifteenth century Europeans were anxious to trade with India direct and so they wanted to find a route to India which should be safe from the attacks of the Muslims.

In 1498 *Vasco da Gama*, a Portuguese sailor, rounded the Cape of Good Hope and succeeded in reaching the port of Calicut. Thus a new route was discovered which has come to be known as the *Cape Route*. Vasco da Gama established friendly relations with the Hindu Raja of Calicut whose title was the *Zamorin*, and obtained permission from him for the Portuguese to trade with India. He returned to his country in 1499. In 1501 he came a second time to India and went back to Portugal in 1503. During this time he founded a factory in Cannanor.

First of all, *the Portuguese* and then, following their example, *the Dutch*, *the English* and *the French* came by this route to trade with India.

Q. Briefly describe the rise and fall of the Portuguese power in India.

The Portuguese: As the Portuguese had discovered the Cape Route, they were the first European nation to trade with India. They established many trading factories at Calicut, Cochin, Cannanor etc., on the western coast of India. These factories necessitated the appointment of a Viceroy.

The first viceroy of the Portuguese was Francisco Almeida (1505—1509). His policy was not to make conquests but to make *Portugal the mistress of the Indian Seas*. He inflicted crushing defeats on the Arabs, who, in those days traded with India. Thus the whole Indian sea-borne trade passed into the hands of the Portuguese.

Almeida was succeeded by Albuquerque (1509—15) who proved to be the ablest Portuguese viceroy in India. He was every inch a patriot and possessed an iron will. *His policy was to establish a Portuguese empire in the East*. With this object in view he conquered Goa from the Sultan of Bijapur in 1510 and made it his capital. Later on he conquered many other towns. He governed his territory very ably. He established schools and tried to stop the practice of *sati*. He died in 1515 and was buried at Goa.

This policy of conquests continued even after Albuquerque and by the close of the 16th century the Portuguese empire extended hundreds of miles along the west coast of India. The Portuguese power lasted a century and then it began to decline.

**Causes of Decline.** The following were the main causes of the decline of the Portuguese power in India :—

1. *Oppression.* Portuguese officers were very haughty and tyrannical. They did not treat their subjects well. In particular, they hated the Muslims.

2. *Religious Intolerance.* In Portuguese territories religious liberty was unknown. Forcible conversions to Christianity were the order of the day.

3. *Piracy.* The Portuguese took to piracy and plundered Indian ships. They also kidnapped small children and sold them as slaves.

For these reasons Portuguese rule in India was bitterly hated.

4. *Fall of Vijayanagar.* The destruction of the Vijayanagar kingdom was a severe blow to the Portuguese power and prosperity in India, since the Portuguese carried on an extensive trade with Vijayanagar.



Subedar of Bengal) the Company obtained permission to trade in Bengal. Accordingly the English set up factories at Hugli and other places.

In 1661, Charles II, King of England gave permission to the Company to issue coins, to build forts for protection and to declare war when the necessity arose.

In 1668, Charles II made over Bombay to the Company at an annual rent of £10. This town he had received in 1661, as part of dowry through his marriage with the Portuguese princess, Catherine of Braganza.

In 1690, the English founded the city of Calcutta on the Hugli, and six years later they built a fort there which they named Fort William after their king William III.

In 1693, some English merchants formed another East India Company. For a time both these Companies were engaged in competition with each other but in 1708 they were united. This United East India Company laid the foundation of British rule in India. The mutiny of 1857 put an end to the rule of this Company and their dominions were transferred to the Crown.

### Q. Write a short note on the French in India.

**The French.** Following the example of other European countries the French, too, set up a trading company in 1664 and soon after established factories at Masulipatam and Surat. In 1674 they founded Pondicherry and made it there headquarters. In course of time they got possession of other towns and also seized the islands of Bourbon and Mauritius in the Indian Ocean which formed their naval bases.

From 1735 to 1741 one *Dumas* was governor of French possessions in India. He strengthened the French power in India. His successor *Dupleix* was a very able and far-sighted statesman. During his governorship there were wars between the English and the French owing to their mutual rivalry. In these wars the English came out victorious and the French power came to an end. The French still hold (1) *Pondicherry* (2) *Mahe* (3) *Karikal* (4) *Yanaon* and (5) *Chandarnagar*.

---

## CHAPTER II

THE STRUGGLE BETWEEN THE  
ENGLISH AND THE FRENCH

**Q.** Give a brief account of the struggle between the English and the French for empire in India in the eighteenth century. (Important).

**Causes of the Struggle.** The English and the French Companies had been established with the object of trading with India. But when they found the Moghul Empire weak both of them sought to establish their own empires. The natural result of this desire was that a war broke out between them, which lasted about twenty years. In this war the English came out victorious. This war can be divided into three periods known as the three Karnatak wars.

### The First Karnatak War, 1746-48. ✓

**Cause.** In 1741, a war known as the War of the Austrian Succession broke out in Europe. In this war England and France took opposite sides. In 1744 war was formally declared between these two countries. This led to a war between the English and the French East India Companies in India also.

**Events.** In 1746 the French fleet under La Bourdonnais captured Madras. The French also tried to capture Fort St. David but were unsuccessful. In the meantime reinforcements arrived from England and the English attacked Pondicherry; they were, however, repulsed with heavy loss.

**Results.** In 1748 the *Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle* (modern Aachen) put an end to the war in Europe. In India, too, hostilities ceased and Madras was restored to the English.

### The Second Karnatak War, 1749-1755.

**Causes.** In 1748 Asaf Jah, the aged Nizam of Hyderabad, died and a dispute arose regarding the succession between his son Nasir Jang and his grandson Muzaffar Jang. At the same time there arose a dispute about the Nawabship of the Karnatak. Chanda Sahib, the son-in-law of a former Nawab, was a candidate against Anwar-ud-Din, the

1. The French Government did not stand by him, but dismissed him.

2. The French officers under Dupleix did not co-operate with each other. They were jealous of each other.

3. Dupleix was not a soldier himself, moreover he was arrogant and quarrelled with his colleagues.

4. But the chief cause of Dupleix's failure was the naval supremacy of England.

Q. Write short notes on :—(a) Lally (b) Bussy.

**Count de-Lally.** Lally was a brave, adventurous, but somewhat headstrong French general. When the Seven Years' War broke out in Europe, the French government sent him out as Governor-General of French possessions in India. Soon after his arrival he captured Fort St. David. Then he recalled Bussy from Hyderabad to help him in attacking Madras. This proved a blunder, because as soon as Bussy left Hyderabad, French influence was at an end there. At last Lally was defeated at Wandiwash in 1760. Next year he was defeated at Pondichery and was sent to England as prisoner of war. He was allowed to return to France, where he was tried and sentenced to death.

**Bussy.** Bussy was the ablest French general in the Karnatak Wars. The victories of the French, Chanda Sahib, and Muzaffar Jang were all due to his skill. It was through his influence that the French obtained the Northern Sirkars. But when Lally recalled him from Hyderabad the English succeeded in securing possession of that district. In the battle of Wandiwash, Bussy was defeated and taken prisoner. After his release he went to France. He came to India once more but died soon after.

## CHAPTER III

### CONQUEST OF BENGAL

Q. Briefly describe the story of the British conquest of Bengal.

**Conquest of Bengal.** Bengal came into the possession of the British by the Battle of Plassey (1757) and the conquest was completed by the Battle of Buxar (1764). Robert Clive was the conqueror of Bengal.


During the reign of Muhammad Shah *Rangila*, Ali Verdi Khan, the Governor of Bengal, declared his independence in 1741. His capital was Murshidabad. He was an able and shrewd man. In 1756 he was succeeded by his grandson Mirza Muhammad, better known in history as *Siraj-ud-Daula*, an inexperienced young man. As soon as he ascended the throne, he picked a quarrel with the English. *One* reason of this quarrel was that the English were in those days strengthening the fortifications of Fort William and Siraj-ud-Daula forbade them to do so. They refused to carry out his command. *Secondly* they gave shelter to one Kishen Das, a rich merchant of Bengal, who had incurred the displeasure of the Nawab. The English refused to surrender him when the Nawab demanded it. *Thirdly* the English were misusing the trade privileges granted to them.

**The Black Hole.** The Nawab was angry and he at once captured the English factory at Cossimbazar. Then he marched upon Calcutta and conquered it (June 1756). It is said that he imprisoned 146 English prisoners in a small dungeon called the Black Hole. It was a hot sultry night and when the door was opened next morning only 23 of them came out alive. This is known as the *Black Hole Tragedy*. (Some historians do not believe that this thing ever happened.)

When the news of this incident reached Madras, Clive and Admiral Watson were sent to Calcutta at the head of a strong force. Calcutta was soon reoccupied. Now the Nawab made peace and restored all the possessions and privileges to the English and promised to make good the loss.

**Conspiracy against the Nawab.** In spite of this peace the Nawab was secretly intriguing with the French. At this Clive made up his mind to put him out of the way. He found a good opportunity to accomplish his

object. At this time the courtiers of the Nawab were disgusted with his oppressive rule and they wanted to set up Mir Jafar, the commander-in-chief and brother-in-law of Ali Verdi Khan as Nawab. Clive also joined this conspiracy through one Amin Chand, a wealthy Sikh banker of Calcutta. When everything was settled, Amin Chand threatened to disclose the whole secret to the Nawab unless he was paid thirty lakhs of rupees. Now Clive met fraud by fraud. He prepared two drafts of the treaty. In the genuine draft there was no mention of this sum to be paid to Amin Chand. But in the false draft Amin Chand was promised thirty lakhs of rupees. On this false draft the signatures of Watson were forged. Thus Amin Chand was silenced.

 The Battle of Plassey, 23rd June, 1757. ✓ When the conspiracy to depose Siraj-ud Daula and set up Mir Jafar as Nawab of Bengal was matured, Clive wrote a letter to Siraj-ud-Daula wherein he accused the Nawab of not abiding by the treaty and of intriguing with the French. Without waiting for a reply Clive set out for Plassey (about seventy miles north of Calcutta) at the head of about 3200 troops. The Nawab's forces of 50,000 infantry and 18,000 cavalry were already encamped there. Clive showed some indecision at first for he was not sure of the help of Mir Jafar but then he decided upon war.

On 23rd June, 1757 at midday was fought the famous Battle of Plassey. In the afternoon the English army made a charge. A handful of Frenchmen in the service of the Nawab offered some resistance but it was soon over. Mir Jafar so far had not taken any active part in the battle but when he became sure of the English success he came over to Clive. The Nawab's forces were completely routed and he fled from the field. But he was caught and Mir Jafar's son, Miran got him put to death.

**Result** (i) Mir Jafar became Nawab of Bengal (ii) He assigned the *zamindari* of the twenty-four Parganas (a tract of land near Calcutta) to the English Company. (iii) He gave large sums of money as rewards to the servants of the Company.

**Importance.** The Battle of Plassey was not heroic in action but *politically it is one of the most important battles in the history of the world.* After this battle the English secured possession of the rich and fertile province of Bengal which in those days consisted of the present provinces of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. It was this possession that led to the victory of the English in the Deccan over the French. *The Battle of Plassey gave to the English the key to the conquest of India.*

In 1764 was fought the Battle of Buxar, whereby the English obtained the *Diwani* of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. Thus the whole of Bengal came under the dominion of the English.

---

## CHAPTER IV

### MIR JAFAR AND MIR QASIM

**Q.** Write short notes on :—(a) Mir Jafar, (b) Mir Qasim.

**Mir Jafar, 1757–1761.** Mir Jafar was the brother-in-law of Ali Verdi Khan, the governor of Bengal, and commander-in-chief of the army of Siraj-ud-Daula. After the Battle of Plassey he was made Nawab of Bengal. But he was a Nawab in name only. The real power was in the hands of Clive. Mir Jafar did not want to remain a puppet Nawab. He therefore, carried on intrigues with the Dutch of Chinsura. But Clive inflicted a crushing defeat on them (1759) and the Dutch political power in India came to an end.

When he became Nawab, Mir Jafar made huge presents to the English but before he could pay the promised amount his treasury became empty and he could not fulfil his promise. Nor could he carry on the government successfully. He was, therefore, deposed and his son-in-law Mir Qasim was made Nawab. In 1763 Mir Qasim was deposed and Mir Jafar was again made Nawab. In February 1765 Mir Jafar died.

**Mir Qasim, 1761–1763.** Mir Qasim was the son-in-law of Mir Jafar. In 1761 the British made him

Nawab of Bengal. In return he ceded to the English the three districts of *Bardwan*, *Midnapur* and *Chittagong*.

Mir Qasim was a capable and energetic ruler, but the English did not let him rule in peace. The servants of the Company had begun to carry on private trade without paying any duties. Not satisfied with this they now began the practice of selling 'permits' to Indian merchants who thus carried their goods duty-free. Naturally the income of the Nawab began to decrease. He complained to the Calcutta Council but they turned a deaf ear to his complaint.

Now the Nawab wanted to get rid of the influence of the Company. Accordingly he transferred his capital from Murshidabad to Monghyr. At the same time he abolished all duties on trade and thus deprived the servants of the Company of the illegal gain which they made by selling 'permits'. This enraged the English who declared war on him. Mir Qasim was defeated in a battle and he fled to Patna. There he ordered Samrū, a German official of his to massacre nearly two hundred English prisoners. This is called the *Massacre of Patna* (1763). Mir Qasim now took refuge with the Nawab of Oudh, and the English authorities set up Mir Jafar as Nawab of Bengal once more. Mir Qasim now attacked the English with the help of Shuja-ud Daula, Nawab of Oudh and Shah Alam II the Mughal Emperor. In the battle of Buxar they were all defeated. Mir Qasim fled and nobody knows what became of him.

**Q.** State briefly the causes, main events and results of the Battle of Buxar. (Important)

**Battle of Buxar, 1764:**


**Cause.** After Mir Qasim had been defeated by the English (1763) he fled and took refuge with Nawab Wazir Shuja-ud-Daula of Oudh. In those days Shah Alam II, the Mughal Emperor, was also there. Both Shuja-ud-Daula and Shah Alam decided to help Mir Qasim. Accordingly these three viz. Shuja-ud-Daula, Shah Alam and Mir Qasim invaded Bengal.

Events. The English General Major Munro defeated them at the Battle of Buxar (23rd October, 1764). Mir Qasim fled and was never heard of again. Shah Alam and Shuja-ud-Daula surrendered themselves to the English. The importance of this battle lies in the fact that the Emperor of Delhi was defeated.

Result. In 1765 the Treaty of Allahabad was concluded between Clive on one side and Shah Alam and Shuja-ud-Daula on the other. By this treaty Shah Alam granted to the English the Diwani (right to collect revenue) of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. Thus the English became masters of the whole of Bengal. In course of time they became the most powerful state in the whole of Northern India. Thus the Battle of Buxar made up for the deficiency of the Battle of Plassey.

## CHAPTER V

### ROBERT CLIVE.

 Q. Describe the early career of Clive and give a brief account of his first and second administrations of Bengal. (Important)

Robert Clive. Robert Clive was born in 1725 in a small town in England. He did not take much interest in studies and at the age of nineteen came to India as a clerk in the service of the East India Company.

For a time he served as a clerk, but he soon got tired of it. Twice he made unsuccessful attempts at suicide. At last he resigned his post as clerk and enlisted in the army.

He showed his talents in the Second Karnatak War. Just at a time when Dupleix's plans were about to be crowned with success, Clive captured Arcot and thereby changed the fortunes of war. *Thus he saved the English prestige in the Deccan from being destroyed.* In 1753 he returned to England on account of bad health.

In 1756 Clive came to India again. In 1757 he won the Battle of Plassey *which strengthened the position of the*



# CHAPTER VII

## WARREN HASTINGS, GOVERNOR OF BENGAL

### 1772—1774

#### Events

(1) Reforms (2) Rohilla War (3) Regulating Act.

*Appointment of Warren Hastings and his difficulties.*

Like Clive, Warren Hastings, too, had come out to India as a clerk at the age of 18. By dint of ability he rose to be the Governor of Bengal in 1772 when he was forty years old.

At this time Bengal was in a bad way. The Dual Government had caused confusion and disorder. There was no satisfactory arrangement for the collection of revenue. The treasury was empty and there was a terrible famine in the country. The department of justice was disorganised. The country was infested with robbers. Accordingly the first step that Warren Hastings took was to put an end to the Dual Government. He also introduced reforms in the administrative machinery.

**Q.** Briefly describe the reforms of Warren Hastings.

**Reforms.** The reforms of Warren Hastings can be classified under three heads.

**A. Revenue Reforms.**

Hastings adopted the following measures to improve the revenue system -

1. In 1772 he introduced a five-year settlement. Land was given to the highest bidder. But at the end of five years the contracts were made yearly.

2. He appointed an English Collector in every district for the collection of revenue.

3. He transferred the capital from Murshidabad to Calcutta (the headquarters of the Company) and established

a Board of Revenue there to supervise the collection of revenue.

### B. Judicial Reforms.

To improve the administration of justice Warren Hastings adopted the following measures :—

1. He established a Civil and a Criminal Court in every district of Bengal. The Civil Court was presided over by the English Collector who also collected the revenue.

2. He established two Courts of Appeal at Calcutta viz., the *Sadar Diwani Adalat* (the Supreme Civil Court) and the *Sadar Nizamat Adalat* (the Supreme Criminal Court) which heard appeals in civil and revenue cases and criminal cases respectively.

3. He compiled a simple Code about the personal law of Hindus and Muslims.

### C. Economy.

1. He reduced the allowance of the Nawab of Bengal to one-half, i.e., from 32 lakhs to 16 lakhs of rupees.

2. He stopped the annual allowance of 26 Lakhs of rupees to Shah Alam II since he had sought the protection of the Marathas.

3. He seized the districts of Kora and Allahabad from Shah Alam and sold them to Shuja-ud-Daula, Nawab of Oudh, for fifty lakhs of rupees.

4. He helped Shuja-ud-Daula against the Rohillas and thus obtained a sum of forty lakhs.

### Q. Give a brief account of the Rohilla War.

Rohilla War, 1774. The Rohillas were a warlike Afghan tribe. They inhabited the fertile territory north-west of Oudh called Rohilkhand after them. Their chief was one Hafiz Rahmat Khan. The Marathas often threatened this fertile territory. Therefore Rohillas appealed to Shuja-ud-Daula, Nawab of Oudh, to help

them against the Marathas and agreed to pay him forty lakhs of rupees in return.

In 1773 the Marathas attacked Rohilkhand but on account of the murder of their Peshwa retreated without fighting. Now Nawab Shuja-ud-Daula demanded the sum of Rs. 4,000,000 but the Rohillas evaded payment. At this the Nawab sought the help of Warren Hastings and agreed to pay him Rs. 4,000,000 in addition to defraying all the costs of the war. Hastings who was in sore need of money helped him with a British Brigade (under Col. Champion). The Rohillas were defeated at Miranpur Katra and their chief Hafiz Rahmat Khan was killed in the battle. About twenty thousand Rohillas left their country and Rohilkhand was annexed to Oudh.

*Note:—*The help which Warren Hastings gave to Shuja-ud-Daula against the Rohillas by hiring out English troops is *morally* indefensible, because the Rohillas had done no injury to the Company. *Politically* it can be justified to this extent that the Company obtained a sum of Rs. 4,000,000 and by the annexation of Rohilkhand to Oudh, the north-western frontier of the Company was strengthened.

**Q.** What circumstances led to the passing of the Regulating Act? Describe its main provisions and defects. (Important)

**Regulating Act, 1773.** In 1773, the British Parliament passed an Act to improve the affairs of the Company. This Act was known as the Regulating Act.

**Cause:—**One reason why the Regulating Act was passed was that the Company was no longer merely a trading company, but had become a ruling company. Parliament, therefore, thought it proper to supervise its affairs. Another reason was that the servants of the Company engaged in private trade. They thus enriched themselves, but the financial condition of the Company was going from bad to worse. In 1772 the Directors asked the British Government for a loan of £ 1,000,000 otherwise they would have to wind up. An inquiry was held which revealed that the financial condition of the Company was very unsound. Lord North's Government,\* therefore, passed the Regulating Act in 1773 in order to improve the affairs of the Company.

---

\* Lord North was, in those days, Prime Minister of England.

**Provisions :—**The chief clauses of the Regulating Act were as follows :—

1. The Directors were bound to submit all correspondence dealing with the civil and military affairs of the Company to the ministry.

2. The Governor of Bengal was made the Governor-General of English possessions in India.

3. A Council of four members was created to assist him. The Governor-General had to submit to the decision of the majority though he was given a casting vote when there was an equal division of opinion.

4. In foreign policy *i.e.*, when making peace or war, the Presidencies of Bombay and Madras were made subordinate to the Governor-General and his council, but in times of emergency or in the event of having received special orders from England they could act on their own initiative.

5. A Supreme Court consisting of one Chief Justice and three puisne (assistant) judges was established in Calcutta.

*Note :—*The first Chief Justice was Sir Elijah Impey.

6. The servants of the Company were forbidden to engage in private trade or accept presents etc.

**Defects of the Regulating Act.** The Regulating Act was defective in several respects :—

1. The worst defect was that the Governor-General had not complete authority over his council. He had to submit to the decision of the majority. The members, therefore, if they were united, could have their own way in everything.

2. It was not made clear in the Act what were to be the powers and jurisdiction of the Supreme Court and what would be its relations with the Governor-General's Council.

3. The Governors of Bombay and Madras, though under the Governor-General in their foreign policy could

Now Warren Hastings wanted to bring this war to a close, for in the first place it was very costly and secondly Haidar Ali was increasing his power in the Deccan. The Treaty of Salbai in 1782 put an end to this war.

**Result.** By the Treaty of Salbai in 1782 (1) Madho Rao Narain was recognised as the Peshwa. (2) Salsette was ceded to the English and (3) a pension of Rs. 300,000 a year was settled on Raghoba.

*This treaty secured peace with the Marathas for 20 years.*

**Q.** Briefly describe the causes, main events and results of the Second Mysore War, 1780–84.

**Causes.** 1. After the First Mysore War the English had promised to help Haidar Ali, Sultan of Mysore, if he was attacked. But when the Marathas attacked his territory, after the treaty, the English refused to help him. Haidar Ali was angry at this.

2. During the American War of Independence France joined America against England (1778). At this the English captured all French possessions in India. One of them was Mahe which was of great importance to Haidar Ali. He, therefore, demanded of the English to evacuate it. They did not comply with his demand and so Haider Ali declared war.

**Events.** At the head of a strong force Haidar Ali invaded the Karnatak and laid waste the whole country. Col. Baillie was defeated and Major Munro, the victor of Buxar, threw his guns in a tank at Kanjiveram and retreated to Madras. Now Sir Eyre Coote of the Wandiwash fame was sent from Bengal. He defeated Haider Ali at Porto Novo, Pollilor and Solangarh. Reinforcements also arrived from France which gave further encouragement to Haider Ali. Tipu, son of Haidar Ali, also destroyed an English army under Col. Braithwaite. But the war was not yet over when Haidar Ali died in 1782.

After the death of Haider Ali, his son Tipu, continued the war and made some conquests. Peace was, at last, concluded in 1784 by the Treaty of Mangalore.

**Result.** By the treaty of Mangalore conquered territories and prisoners of war were restored by both the parties.

**Q.** Write a short note on the money difficulties and money exactions of Warren Hastings. (P. U. 1930.)

**Money Difficulties.** Warren Hastings had to face serious money difficulties since large sums of money had been spent in the wars against the Marathas and Haider Ali. He also needed money to carry on the administration. The Directors, too, were making heavy demands for money. Pressed by these difficulties Warren Hastings obtained money by improper means in some cases. Two such cases are worthy of note.

1. **Deposition of Chet Singh.** Chet Singh was the raja of Benares under the overlordship of the Company. He paid a yearly tribute of Rs. 22½ lakhs. Warren Hastings (in 1778) demanded an additional tribute of Rs. 500,000. Chet Singh paid this sum for two years but then evaded payment. At this Warren Hastings imposed a fine of fifty lakhs of rupees on him and himself went to Benares to receive payment. There he put the Raja under arrest. At this the troops of the Raja rose suddenly and massacred some English troops. Hastings had to fly to Chunar to save his life. Chet Singh, too, escaped from custody. The Company got no money. The only result was that Chet Singh was deposed and his nephew was made Raja. The amount of yearly tribute was raised to 40 lakhs of rupees.

2. **Affair of the Begums of Oudh.** When Warren Hastings could not get any money from Benares he thought of another plan. Asaf-ud-Daula, the Nawab of Oudh, owed a large sum of money to the English since for several years he had not paid for the expenses of the English army stationed in his state. Warren Hastings demanded payment but the Nawab replied that he had no money since his mother and grandmother had appropriated all the cash. If the English could help him in getting that money from the ladies, he would settle up all the accounts. Warren Hastings believed that the Begums had a hand in Chait Singh's revolt and so he gave him the required help and squeezed out Rs 7,600,000 from the Begums.

*Note.*—Both the above mentioned steps taken by Warren Hastings were improper. His treatment of Chet Singh and the Begums of Oudh was


## CHAPTER VIII

### LORD CORNWALLIS

#### 1786—1793

#### Events

(1) Reforms (2) Permanent Settlement (3) Third Mysore War.

 Q. Give a brief account of the administration of Lord Cornwallis with special reference to his judicial and revenue reforms. (Very Important) (P.U. 1918-20-25-34-38)

**Appointment of Cornwallis.** Cornwallis was a distinguished statesman, good general and influential landlord of England. He was appointed Governor-General as well as Commander-in-Chief, and by an Act passed in 1786 he had been empowered in certain circumstances to override the decisions of his Council.

**Reforms.** Lord Cornwallis is specially known for his reforms. These reforms can be classified under three heads (1) Suppression of corruption (2) Judicial reforms (3) Revenue reforms i.e., the Permanent Settlement of Bengal.

1. **Suppression of Corruption.** In those days the servants of the Company received small salaries and there was no provision for pensions. To supplement their incomes the servants of the Company engaged in private trade and received heavy bribes.\* Cornwallis soon put an end to this evil. He raised their salaries and made strict regulations against private trade and corruption.

2. **Judicial Reforms.** (1) Before Cornwallis assumed office, the Collectors had two duties to perform. They collected revenue and presided over the Civil Courts. Cornwallis separated these two functions. Now a Collector had only to collect revenue, and separate District Judges were appointed for the Civil Courts.

---

\*The Resident at Benares had a salary of £1350 a year but he could make £40000 a year besides his pay.

(2) He established four Appellate Courts one each at Calcutta, Patna, Dacca and Murshidabad, to hear appeals against the decisions of the district courts. The final courts of appeal were, as before, the Sadar Diwani Adalat and the Sadar Nizamat Adalat.

(3) He abolished barbarous punishments like mutilation etc.

(4) He compiled a new Code called after him the Cornwallis Code.

(5) He reformed the Police Department also. Every district was divided into thanas, and each thana was placed under a *darogha* with constables subordinate to him.

These reforms of Lord Cornwallis were very useful, but *he made one very great mistake*, that is, he made it a rule that no Indian should be appointed to an important post, since he had no faith in their competence. This made the administration very costly and less efficient.

**3. Permanent Settlement.** *The most important event of the time of Lord Cornwallis was the introduction of Permanent Settlement in Bengal.* Before the British rule, revenue was collected by local officers called *zamindars*. They kept their own commission ( $\frac{1}{10}$  of the revenue) and paid the balance ( $\frac{9}{10}$  of the revenue) into the Government treasury. They were also responsible for keeping peace and order in their zamindari. In course of time the office of *zamindar* became hereditary.

When by the Treaty of Allahabad the Company obtained the Diwani of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa, Clive made no change in this system of revenue collection but left it in the hands of Indians. But Warren Hastings put lands to auction, that is, the highest bidder was made *zamindar*. In 1772 this settlement was made for five years, in 1777 it was made annual. But this system proved unsatisfactory. The following were its chief defects:—

1. The *zamindars* made such high bids, that they could not make up the amount by revenue collection. They were thus ruined and the income of the Government, too, uncertain.



## SIR JOHN SHORE

1793 – 1798

Sir John Shore succeeded Lord Cornwallis as Governor-General. He was a staunch advocate of the Policy of Non-intervention.

**Battle of Kurdla, 1795** The Marathas were at this time rising to power. In order to recover tribute which the Nizam had agreed to pay when he was defeated on a former occasion they invaded his territory. The Nizam sought the help of the English on the strength of a former treaty, but Sir John Shore gave a flat refusal. The Nizam suffered a heavy defeat at Kharda (Kurdla). This increased the power of the Marathas and made the Nizam suspicious of the English. He turned out English officers and employed French officers instead.

**Q. Write a short note on the Policy of Non-intervention.**

**Policy of Non-intervention.** The Policy of Non-intervention means that the English should not interfere in the affairs of the Indian states. This policy was followed even on former occasions, but it was expressly laid down in Pitt's India Act that the Company would not interfere in the affairs of Indian states and would abandon the policy of extension of empire.

This Policy of Non-intervention was harmful to British interests in India. For it is evident that when the English would not utilize an opportunity to their advantage, their enemies would utilize it to strengthen their own power. This is why several Governors-General did not act on this policy.

Sir John Shore, Sir George Barlow and to some extent Lord Minto followed this policy, and the British prestige consequently suffered. But Lord Wellesley and the Marquess of Hastings definitely abandoned it, and extended the British empire. After this the Policy of Non-intervention is nowhere mentioned.

## CHAPTER IX

## LORD WELLESLEY

1798 1805

## Events

(1) Subsidiary System (2) Fourth Mysore War (3) Treaty of Bassein (4) Second Maratha War (5) Third Maratha War (6) Annexations.

**Lord Wellesley.** Lord Wellesley was Governor-General of English possessions in India from 1798 to 1805. He was a very diplomatic and wide-awake ruler. He holds a place among the first-rate Governors-General of India. His chief achievement is that *he made the East India Company the paramount power in India.*

**Policy of Wellesley.** At that time when Wellesley was appointed Governor-General the Company was in a critical condition. The non-intervention policy of Sir John Shore had turned the weak states away from the English and the powerful states were now devising means to drive out the English and increase their own power.

The Nizam had turned against the English on account of their breach of faith. Tipu wanted to revenge his previous defeat on them, and was, with this object in view carrying on negotiations with France and Turkey. In Central India the Marathas were in power. Worst of all French influence was on the increase in the Indian states especially those of Sindhya and the Nizam where French officers were training Indian regiments. On top of all this England was busy in a life and death struggle with France in Europe and Napoleon Bonaparte, the French General, had come as far as Egypt on his way to conquer India.

When Lord Wellesley pondered this serious condition of the Company he arrived at the conclusion that if the English power were to succeed in India it must be the paramount power. He, therefore, frankly abandoned the policy of non-intervention and adopted the policy of **extension** of

empire. *He made the subsidiary System the corner-stone of his policy.*

**Q.** Write a short note on the Subsidiary System.

**Subsidiary System :** What it was. Lord Wellesley prepared a scheme to make the English the paramount power in India. This scheme is known as the Subsidiary System.

**Provisions.** The Indian ruler who came under this system had to agree to the following terms :—

1. That ruler must acknowledge the Company as the paramount power in India.
2. He must not employ any non-English European in his service ; and must dismiss any such already in his employ.
3. He must not make war on or peace with any other ruler without the consent of the British.
4. He must accept a British Resident in his state.
5. If he had a dispute with any other ruler, he must submit to the arbitration of the English.
6. He must maintain at his own cost a contingent British force in his state. Later on the practice grew up that instead of making cash payments for the maintenance of the contingent force, the ruler had to cede a portion of the territory.

In return the Company undertook to protect the ruler against internal rebellion or external invasion.

**Why it was so called.** The money which the Indian ruler paid for the maintenance of the contingent force was called *subsidy*, hence this scheme came to be called the Subsidiary System.

**Who came under it ?** Lord Wellesley made an offer to all the important Indian states to accept this and he was successful to a great extent.

1. The first to come under this system was *the Nizam* because he had been weakened on account of his recent defeat by the Marathas.

2. Wellesley compelled the *Nawab of Oudh* also to accept it.

3. Tipu refused to accept it, so war was declared against him. He fell in the Fourth Mysore War and *Raja Krishna of Mysore* accepted it.

4. The *Peshwa Baji Rao II* concluded the Treaty of Bassein after his defeat by Holkar and accepted the Subsidiary System.

5. After the Second Maratha War, both *Bhonsla* and *Sindhia* accepted it.

6. The *Gaekwar* and several *Rajput States* also accepted it.

**Advantages.** The Subsidiary System made the position of the British very strong. They obtained control over many Indian states who could not, therefore, conclude a treaty injurious to the British. The French influence waned and the English got a trained army in each of these subordinate states without any cost. *In short the Company became the paramount power in India.*

**Defects.** The chief defect in this system was that now that the Indian rulers were assured of British protection in case of internal rebellion or external invasion, *they became careless and fell in evil ways.* There was misgovernment and oppression in such states and at last some of them were annexed by the English.

**Q.** State concisely the causes, main events and effects of the Fourth Mysore War.

**Fourth Mysore War, 1799.** This war was fought between Tipu Sultan and the British.

**Causes.** 1. Tipu was intriguing with the French in order to revenge his former defeat on the English. When the Governor-General asked for an explanation, he returned a haughty and evasive answer.

2. Wellesley asked him to accept the Subsidiary System, but he refused. War was, therefore, declared.

**Q. Briefly describe the Third Maratha War.**

**Third Maratha War, 1804-1805.** Holkar had so far remained aloof, but he was in the meantime devastating the Rajput states under the protection of the English on his own account. Wellesley warned him but he paid no heed. Wellesley, therefore, declared war.

**Events.** In the beginning Holkar achieved remarkable success. He inflicted a crushing defeat on Col. Monson who had advanced too far into Rajputana. At this the Raja of Bharatpur, too, went over to the side of Holkar and both of them made an attack on Delhi, but here they were not successful. After this Lord Lake defeated Holkar at Dig and Farrukhabad and besieged Bharatpur. Four attacks were launched one after another on Bharatpur, but without success. At last the Raja of Bharatpur made peace with the English and Holkar fled to the Punjab where Ranjit Singh was ruling.

The war with Holkar was going on when Lord Wellesley was recalled, because the Directors did not approve of his forward policy. Thus Holkar's power could not be broken.

**Note.**—Some historians consider this war only an extension of the Second Maratha War.

**Q. Write a short note on the annexations of Lord Wellesley.**

**Annexations.** It was part of the policy of Lord Wellesley to annex small states to the British dominions. He annexed the following territories :—

1. **Tanjore.** The state of Tanjore was ill-governed. On the death of the Raja, Lord Wellesley pensioned off his adopted son and annexed Tanjore.


2. **Surat.** The Nawab of Surat, too, was pensioned off and Surat was annexed.

3. **Karnatak.** Karnatak was annexed in 1801 on the ground that its Nawab (Umda-tul-Umra) was in secret correspondence with Tipu against the English. The new Nawab was pensioned off and deposed.

**Note.**—The Raja of Tanjore and the Nawab of Karnatak were allowed to retain their titles.

4. Lord Wellesley also introduced the practice of accepting territories from the feudatory states instead of the subsidy for the maintenance of the contingent forces. Accordingly he acquired Rohilkhand, Gorakhpur and the Doab (the territory between the Ganges and the Jumna) from the Nawab of Oudh and Bellary and Kadapah from the Nizam of Hyderabad.

5. In addition to the above he acquired Kanara and Coimbatore from Mysore after the Fourth Mysore War and Cuttack, Balasore, Broach, Ahmadnagar etc., after the Second Maratha War.

 Q. How far is Lord Wellesley responsible for the establishment of British supremacy in India? (Very Important) (P. U. 1921-23-27-28-33-39.)

Or,

Briefly describe the outstanding achievements of Lord Wellesley.

**Achievements of Lord Wellesley.** Lord Wellesley was a first-rate politician and a wideawake ruler. He is regarded as one of the foremost Governors-General of India. His chief achievement is that he crushed the most dangerous enemies of the Company, acquired immense territory and made the East India Company the paramount power in India.

At the time of Wellesley's appointment as Governor-General the affairs of the Company were in a bad way. The policy of non-intervention pursued by Sir John Shore had lowered the British prestige. The Indian rulers were devising means to increase their own power and put an end to the Company's power in India. The Nizam had lost faith in the English on their refusal to come to his rescue. Tipu was casting about to revenge his former defeat and was plotting with the French. The Marathas were strong in Central India, and French influence was gaining ground in Indian states. The well-known French General Napoleon Bonaparte had reached as far as Egypt on his way to conquer India. In short the Company was surrounded by enemies on all sides.

At this critical juncture Lord Wellesley adopted the forward policy, and made the Subsidiary System the

*under the protection of the English. The Maratha power was considerably weakened, the French influence was all destroyed. Tanjore, Surat and Karnatak, etc., were annexed. The fact is that before Wellesley came, there was a British Empire in India, when he left there was the British Empire in India.*

## SIR GEORGE BARLOW

### 1805-1807

After the recall of Lord Wellesley, Lord Cornwallis was appointed Governor-General second time, but he died at Ghaziabad only three months after his arrival here. Sir George Barlow, the senior member of his council, succeeded him.

Sir George Barlow followed the policy of non-intervention. Soon after his appointment he made peace with Holkar on terms very favourable to the latter. The most important event of his time was the Mutiny of Vellore.

**Mutiny of Vellore, 1806.** In 1806 at Vellore the Indian sepoy mutinied and killed more than a hundred English soldiers and a few officers.

**Cause.** The Commander-in-chief of Madras had introduced some new regulations in the army, for example, the sepoy was required to wear a peculiar kind of head-dress, to get their beards and moustaches trimmed in a certain way, to abstain from wearing their caste-marks on their foreheads etc., etc. The sepoy thought that the Government wanted to make them Christians; for this reason they mutinied. This mutiny was, however, soon put down and all the new regulations were repealed. The sons of Tipu who lived in those days at Vellore, were suspected of having instigated the sepoy. They were deported to Calcutta and William Bentinck, the Governor of Madras was recalled.

## CHAPTER X

### LORD MINTO I

#### 1807-1813

**Q.** Briefly describe the events of the administration of Lord Minto I.

Lord Minto came out to India as Governor-General in 1807. He was a believer in the policy of non-intervention but the disordered state of the country compelled him to give up that policy. The chief events of his administration were as follows :—

1. **Rebellion in Travancore.** In 1808, the minister of Travancore, who had some differences with the Resident rebelled. Some English soldiers were killed and the Resident was attacked. This rebellion was soon put down and the minister committed suicide.

2. **Unrest in Bundelkhand.** The local chiefs in Bundelkhand had grown very turbulent. Lord Minto was obliged to intervene. The rebel chiefs were defeated and peace was restored.

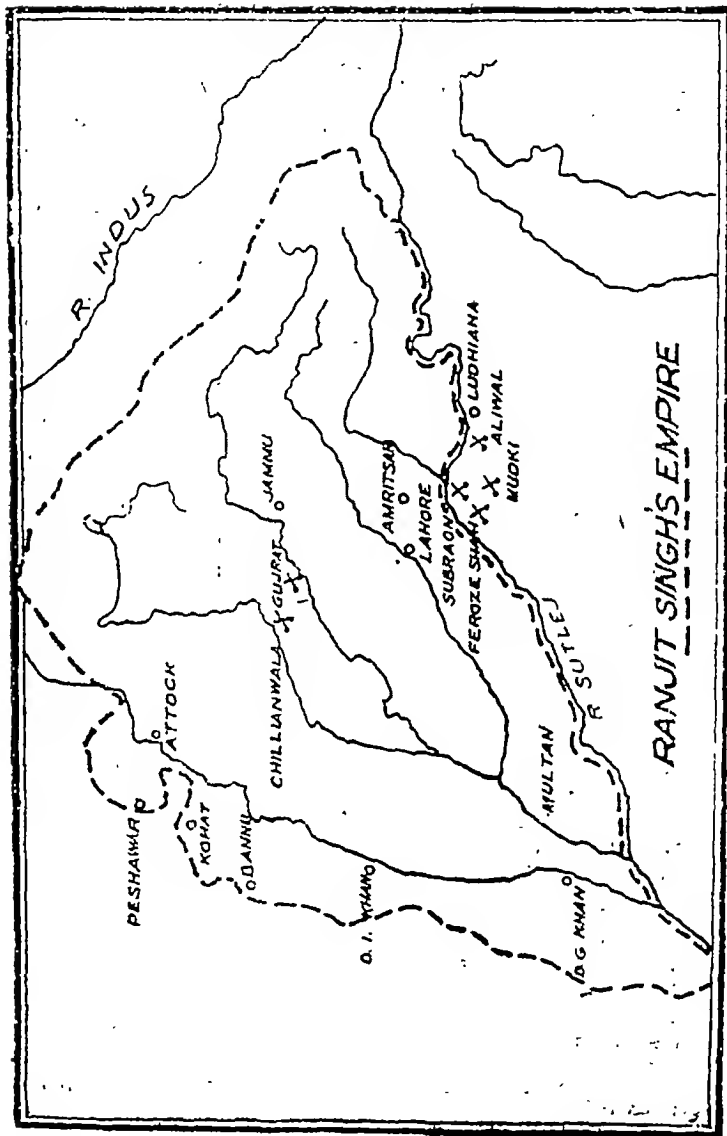
3. **Treaty of Amritsar.** Raja Ranjit Singh of the Punjab was extending his territory. He wanted to annex the Sikh states to the south of the Sutlej. Lord Minto thought it injurious to British interests. He, therefore, sent Sir Charles Metcalfe on a mission to Ranjit Singh and in 1809 was signed the Treaty of Amritsar. *By this treaty the Sutlej was declared the southern boundary of Maharaja Ranjit Singh's dominions.* Maharaja Ranjit Singh abided by this treaty till the end of his life.

4. **Embassies to Foreign Countries.** In those days England and France were at war and it was feared that the French might invade India by land by way of Iran and Afghanistan. To guard against this danger Lord Minto sent embassies to Iran, Afghanistan and Sind in order to conclude treaties with their rulers that they would not allow any European armies to pass through their territories.

*Note :—*The treaty with Afghanistan had little political effect since the country was in a state of anarchy and confusion. The treaty with Iran was concluded by the British Government at home and Lord Minto accepted it.

5. **Naval Warfare.** Lord Minto sent a naval expedition and conquered the French islands of Bourbon (now called Reunion) and Mauritius, because the French had made these islands their naval bases and plundered English merchant ships on their way to and from India. Besides,





himself. The doors of Government service were equally open to Hindus, Muslims or Sikhs. Of his civil officer Faqir Aziz ud-Din, Raja Dina Nath Diwan Sawan Ma Raja Gulab Singh and Raja Dhian Singh were very well known.

**Sources of Income.** The chief source of income was the land revenue which ranged from  $\frac{1}{3}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the produce. Fines and several other taxes were other sources of income. The total annual income of the state was a little over three crores of rupees of which nearly two crores was realised from land revenue. A major portion of this income was spent on the upkeep of the army.

**Military Administration.** The military administration of Ranjit Singh was very efficient. He possessed a very strong army (about 80,000 strong) which was trained and disciplined by Italian and French officers on European lines. Ranjit Singh was specially fond of horses; his stables contained horses of every good breed. Besides he had a well equipped artillery (500 guns). Among his military officers the name of *Sardar Hari Singh Nalwa*, a native of Gujra wala, stands out prominently. He fought a successful campaign against the Afghans. For several years he was the Governor of Jamrud where he built a fort also. In the end he died in an action there.

**Ranjit Singh's Character.** Ranjit Singh is one of the greatest personalities of Indian history. He was a brave and fearless soldier who took delight in warfare. He was also a born administrator and had great political sagacity. Although he was illiterate he patronised learned and brave men and gave them large rewards. He was free from religious bigotry. In giving employment he made no distinction between a Hindu, a Sikh or a Musalman. His soldiers were fondly attached to him. He was fond of pleasures, but this did not hinder him in the performance of his kingly duties. By his courage and sagacity he established his sway all over the Punjab. The main secret of his success was his inborn genius.

**The State of the Punjab after Ranjit Singh's Death.** In 1839 Ranjit Singh died. This was a signal for anarchy.

ven the British territories. In 1816 they ravaged the Northern Circars. At last Lord Hastings made up his mind to extirpate them. Very wisely he first of all detached the Marathas from them and then with a force of 113000 men and 300 guns surrounded them on all sides in Malwa. In a short time he completely routed them. *Amir Khan* made his submission and was given the state of Tonk where his descendants still rule. *Karim Khan* also surrendered and was given a jagir at Ganeshpur near the frontier of Nepal. *Nasir Muhammad* took poison and committed suicide. *Chettu* fled away but was devoured by a tiger in a forest. Thus the Pindaries were exterminated.

### Fourth Maratha War, 1817-1818.

#### Causes.

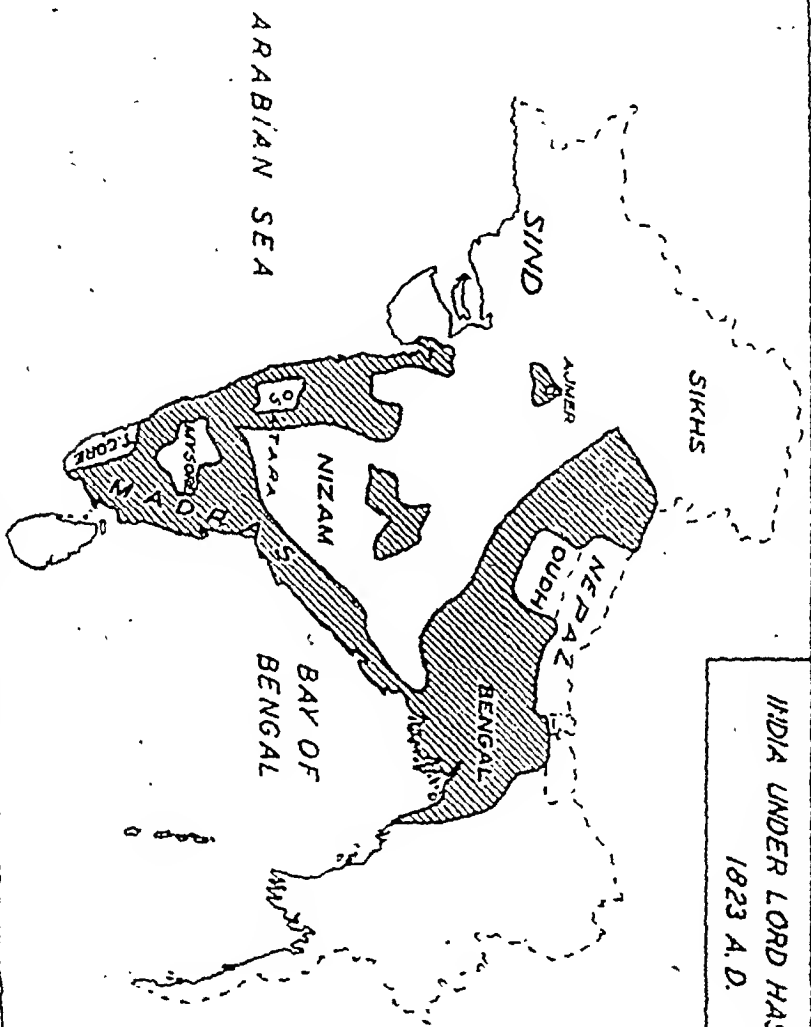
*Real Cause.* Baij Rao II the Peshwa was dissatisfied with the Treaty of Bassein. He took this disgrace keenly to heart and had for a long time been plotting with the other Maratha chiefs to throw off the English domination.

*Immediate Cause.* The immediate cause of this war was as follows. There was a dispute between the Peshwa and the Gaekwar about the payment of tribute. In 1815 Ganga Dhar Shastri, the minister of Gaekwar, came to Poona under the protection of the English to settle this dispute. Here, however, he was assassinated at the instigation of Trimbakji, the minister of the Peshwa. The British demanded the surrender of Trimbakji whom they imprisoned. But soon he escaped from captivity and the Peshwa was suspected of having had a hand in his escape. At the same time it was known that he was plotting with other Maratha chiefs to regain his lost position. The Resident at Poona compelled him to sign another treaty (1817) by which he was required not only to cede some territory to the English but also to renounce his leadership of the Maratha confederacy. In a rage the Peshwa made war.

*Events.* The Peshwa attacked the Residency at Poona and burnt it to ashes, but an English army defeated him at Kirkee and he fled southwards.

In the meantime Appa Sahib Bhonsla and the army of Holkar declared war against the English. Appa Sahib was

INDIA UNDER LORD HASTINGS  
1823 A.D.



2. Sivaji paid his officers in cash but Balaji Vishwanath introduced the system of jagirs. This made the Maratha chiefs strong and the central government weak.

3. The Maratha empire extended over large and distant areas. With the weakening of the central government it became difficult to control the empire efficiently.

4. The defeat of the Marathas in the Third Battle of Panipat weakened the Maratha power for a time at least.

5. After the Third Battle of Panipat the Marathas had to deal with the English, who were superior to them in military strength as well as diplomacy. After the death of Nana Farnavis the Marathas did not produce a single statesman who could hold his own against the British in diplomacy.

6. There was jealousy among the members of the Maratha Confederacy. As long as Nana Farnavis was alive, he kept the Marathas united, but after his death their unity was broken up and their diplomacy was gone. Practically a civil war broke out among them and this weakened their power still further.

7. As long as the Marathas were confined to their native land, their system of (guerrilla) warfare won them success against all rivals. When their dominion extended in plains, they had to fight pitched battles. In this system of warfare the Marathas were no match for the English.

8. The Marathas did not treat their non-Maratha subjects well, thus they could not obtain a firm footing in the conquered territories.

9. The Marathas never cared to consolidate the economic condition of their empire.

---

## ✓ CHAPTER XII LORD AMHERST 1823—1828

Lord Amherst became Governor-General in 1823. His administration is chiefly remembered for the following two events :—

(1) First Burmese War (2) Fall of Bharatpur.

**Q.** Briefly describe the causes, events and results of the First Burmese War. (Important) (P. U. 1936-38-41)

**First Burmese War, 1824-1826.** The most important event of the time of Lord Amherst was the First Burmese War.

**Cause.** The Burmese were extending their power. In 1822 they occupied Assam. In 1823 they captured *Shahpuri*, an island near Chittagong in the Bay of Bengal belonging to the Company. Lord Amherst, thereupon declared war in 1824.

**Events.** Two expeditions were sent to Burma, one by land through Assam and the other by sea so that after the conquest of Rangoon, the expedition might sail up the Irrawady and reach Ava, the capital of Burma. The expedition by land achieved no success, on account of the impassable forests. It was defeated by Maha Bundela the ablest Burmese general. But the second expedition under Sir Archibald Campbell was successful and Rangoon was occupied. Maha Bundela advanced to effect the relief of Rangoon but was defeated, and killed. The English forces advanced as far as Yandbu, within sixty miles of Ava the Capital. The Burmese now sued for peace and the treaty of Yandbu was concluded in 1826.

**Result.** By the Treaty of Yandbu (1826) :—

- (i) The English received the provinces of Assam, Arakan and Tenasserim.
- (ii) They received a war indemnity of one crore of rupees.
- (iii) The Burmese Government agreed to receive a British Resident.

1 A separate Trade Agreement secured some trading privileges for the English in Burma.


**Fall of Bharatpur.** In 1825, on the death of the Raja of Bharatpur, there arose a dispute about succession. The supporters of the rightful heir sought the help of Lord Amherst. He, therefore sent an army **under** Lord Com-

bermire to Bharatpur. The fort was besieged and ultimately fell (1826). The rightful heir, the son of the late raja, was installed on the *gaddi*. The fall of Bharatpur raised the prestige of the English very high since this fort was considered to be impregnable. Even Lord Lake had not been able to reduce it.

## CHAPTER XIII

### LORD WILLIAM BENTINCK

1828-1835

 Q. Briefly describe the social, administrative and educational reforms of Lord William Bentinck. (P. U. 1913-18-20-22-25-33-37-41) and mention the other events of his administration. (Very Important)

Lord William Bentinck who at the time of the Vellore Mutiny (1806) was the Governor of Madras, came out as Governor-General in 1828. He was an enlightened ruler and is well-known in Indian history on account of his reforms. He was the first Governor General to act on the principle that the first duty of the British Government is to promote the welfare of the people, and not simply to extend the territory. The following were the important reforms introduced by Lord William Bentinck.

#### 1. Social Reforms.

(1) *Prohibition of Sati*. The most important reform of Lord William Bentinck was the prohibition of *sati*. The custom of *sati* was a noble example of the selfless and devoted love of a Hindu wife for her husband but in course of time it had degenerated into a downright evil. For the sake of appropriating property the relatives compelled a widow to burn herself on the funeral pyre of her husband. The evil was especially prevalent in Bengal\* where every year hundreds of widows resorted to *sati*. Bentinck passed a Regulation in 1829 by which *sati* and abetment of *sati* were declared criminal offences. In this noble work Lord William

---

\*In 1817 more than 700 women were said to have been burnt alive in this province.

Bentinck received the hearty support of Raja Ram Mohan Roy, the well-known Bengali reformer.

(2) *Suppression of Thuggee.* Another praiseworthy reform of Lord William Bentinck was the suppression of Thuggee. The thugs were a brotherhood of assassins who carried on their nefarious work in a secret manner disguised as merchants or pilgrims *all over the country*, though Central India was the main centre of their activities. These people had fixed certain signs and a secret jargon of their own, and their method of work was that they decoyed an unwary traveller, strangled him to death and seized his property. Bentinck entrusted the task of exterminating these people to Major Sleeman, who uprooted the evil within a period of six years. Over two thousand *thugs* were arrested. Most of them were put to death or transported for life.

(3) *Suppression of Female Infanticide.* A custom had grown up among the Rajputs in Kathiawar and certain parts of Rajputana that they very often put their daughters to death as soon as they were born. Lord William Bentinck put a stop to this evil also.

(4) *Suppression of Human Sacrifices.* The wild tribes of Orissa sometimes practised human sacrifices. Bentinck put a stop to this barbarous practice also.

2. *Financial Reforms.* During the times of Lord Hastings and Lord Amherst, the Company had expended immense sums on the Maratha and Burmese wars. In order to improve the financial condition of the Company Lord William Bentinck adopted the following measures :—

(1) The salaries of the civil servants which were very high in those days were reduced.

(2) The *bhatta* of military officers stationed within 400 miles of Calcutta was reduced to one half.

(3) Indians who since the time of Lord Cornwallis had been excluded from higher posts, were given high posts. A saving was thus effected since Indians were available for service on smaller salaries.

(4) Several zamindars of Bengal paid no land revenue declaring that they had received their lands as gifts from



former rulers. Bentinck got all their *sanads* (title deeds) checked and thus a great many of such zamindars were made to pay revenue.

(5) Tax was levied on the opium of Malwa, and opium contracts were placed on a sounder basis.

All these measures increased the income of the Company.

### 3. Administrative Reforms.

(1) Lord Cornwallis had excluded Indians from higher posts, but now irrespective of colour or creed they began to be appointed to some of the higher posts.

(2) Law Courts were reformed. Provincial Courts set up by Lord Cornwallis were abolished.

(3) A Sadar Adalat and a revenue office were set up at Allahabad. This lightened the work of the Supreme Court at Calcutta.

(4) A new settlement of the North-West Provinces (now called U. P.) was begun.

(5) It was decided that English and vernaculars should be the official and court languages instead of Persian.

(6) A Law Member was added to the Executive Council. The first Law Member was Macaulay (afterwards Lord Macaulay).

(7) The military was also reformed. Bentinck himself performed the functions of the Commander-in-Chief.

### 4. Educational Reforms.

Since 1813 the Company had been spending one lakh of rupees every year on education, but this amount was spent on teaching Oriental languages, i.e. Sanskrit, Arabic, Persian only. During the time of Lord William Bentinck there was a controversy as to what should be the medium of instruction. There were two schools of thought, one led by Macaulay was in favour of substituting English as the medium of instruction; the other led by H. H. Wilson was in favour of retaining Oriental languages. In the end Macaulay's view prevailed and in 1835 the Government

announced that English would be the medium of instruction and the educational grant would be spent on teaching English.

A Medical College was opened at Calcutta, and the Elphinstone College was founded at Bombay.

### Other Notable Events.

**Annexations.** Lord William Bentinck was not in favour of annexing Indian States but in the following cases he had to intervene :—

1. **Mysore.** Raja Krishna of Mysore who had been installed on the *gaddi* by Lord Wellesley turned out a very incompetent and cruel ruler. He was deposed in 1831 and the state administration was placed under British officers. Fifty years later, i.e., in 1881 the administration of the state was restored to the adopted son of Krishna by Lord Ripon.

2. **Kachhar.** Kachhar lies on the North-East Frontier of Bengal. In 1832 on the death of the raja the territory was annexed at the request of the inhabitants.

3. **Coorg.** Coorg lies between Mysore and the Arabian Sea. The raja was very cruel and oppressing. He had put all the members of his family to death. Bentinck deposed him and in compliance with the request of the people annexed the territory.

**Interview with Ranjit Singh.** In 1831 Lord William Bentinck had an interview with Maharaja Ranjit Singh at Ruar. The Governor-General accorded a warm reception to the Maharaja. A treaty of perpetual peace and amity between the English and the Sikhs was signed.

**Treaty with Sind.** In 1832 Lord William Bentinck concluded a treaty with the Amirs of Sindh.

**Charter Act, 1833.** In 1833 the Company's Charter was again renewed and some important changes were effected :—

1. The Company ceased to be a trading Company. It only remained a ruling Company. Its monopoly of trade with China was also abolished.

2. The Governor-General of Bengal came to be styled the Governor-General of India.

3. For the purpose of making laws, a new member, called the Law Member was added to the Council of the Governor-General. *The first Law Member was (Lord) Macaulay.*

4. The Bombay and Madras governments were completely subordinated to the Governor-General. The powers of legislation were taken away from them.

5. It was also laid down that no Indian could be debarred from holding any post under the Company by reason only of his religion, colour or place of birth.

## SIR CHARLES METCALFE

1835—1836

Lord William Bentinck was succeeded by Sir Charles Metcalfe. The only notable event of his time was that he removed all restrictions on Press. The Directors did not approve of this measure, consequently he resigned.

## CHAPTER XIV

### LORD AUCKLAND

1836—1842

### LORD ELLENBOROUGH

1842—1844

**Q.** State concisely the causes, main events and results of the First Afghan War. (Very Important).  
[P. U. 1939-40.]

**First Afghan War, 1839—1842.** The First Afghan War was the most notable event of the time of Lord Auckland. This war began in the time of Lord Auckland and came to an end in the time of Lord Ellenborough.

**Cause.** The main cause of this war was the *fear of Russian invasion*. In those days Russia was extending her power in Central Asia and it was feared that she might invade India by way of Iran and Afghanistan. To guard

against this danger Lord Auckland sent an embassy to Dost Muhammad, Amir of Afghanistan, but the Amir laid down a condition for a treaty of friendship that the English should help him in recovering Peshawar from Ranjit Singh. Lord Auckland could not agree to this condition and Dost Muhammad sent the embassy back and began to treat with Russia. Lord Auckland, therefore, wanted to place Shah Shuja, (a claimant to the throne of Kabul, who was at that time living under British protection at Ludhiana) on the throne of Kabul. With this object in view a *tripartite treaty* was concluded between Lord Auckland, Ranjit Singh and Shah Shuja.

**Events** The English forces entered Afghanistan by way of Sind in 1839. Kandhar, Ghazni and Kabul fell in quick succession. Dost Muhammad fled from Kabul and Shah Shuja was placed on the throne. Shortly after Dost Muhammad surrendered himself and was sent to Calcutta as a state prisoner (1840). Some forces were stationed at Kabul, Qandhar and Jalalabad to help Shah Shuja and the rest came back to India.

For a time there was peace, but the Afghans did not like Shah Shuja because he had won his throne with the help of the English. Accordingly the whole country under the leadership of Akbar Khan, son of Dost Muhammad Khan rose in revolt. The Pathans dragged Burnes, the Political Agent, from his house and cut him to pieces. Shortly after, Akbar Khan, slew Sir William Macnaghten, the British Resident, at an interview (1841). Now the British forces, 16,000 in number including camp followers offered to evacuate. They were disarmed and allowed to return to India. But some died of cold and some were killed by the Afghans on their way to Jalalabad. Only one man Dr. Brydon half dead with wounds succeeded in reaching Jalalabad. This heart-rending news created a sensation in the whole of India. Auckland was recalled and was succeeded by Lord Ellenborough.

To avenge the disaster Lord Ellenborough issued the necessary orders and English forces marched from Jalalabad and Kandhar, and took Ghazni and Kabul. The

main bazaar of Kabul was blown up and English forces returned to India. Thus the war was over.

**Result.** Shah Shuja had in the meantime been assassinated, so Dost Muhammad was recognised as the Amir of Afghanistan.

The English losses in men and money were needlessly heavy.

Q. Write in brief the story of the annexation of Sind. (P. U. 1931.)

**Annexation of Sind. 1843.** For some time some Baluchi chiefs called *Amirs of Sind*, had set up three states (Khairpur, Hyderabad and Mirpur Khas) in Sind. It was during the time of Lord Minto I that they had to deal with the British Government of India for the first time. In those days there was danger of a French invasion of India by land, so Lord Minto I made a treaty of perpetual friendship with the Amirs of Sind. The Amirs promised that they would not allow the French to pass through their territories.

During the time of Lord William Bentinck another treaty was concluded between the British Government and the Amirs of Sind (1832), by which the English were permitted to trade in Sind, but it was stipulated that they would never pass their armies through the country.

During the First Afghan War in wilful defiance of this treaty armies were passed through Sind. In spite of this breach of faith the Amirs remained loyal to the British even when disaster befell the latter. But when the war was over, Ellenborough brought a baseless charge against the Amirs that they had been plotting against the English during that war. Sir Charles Napier was sent with full powers to make inquiries. The fact was that the British government was bent upon annexing Sind, for in the first place Sind could be used as a powerful military base in case of war with Afghanistan; secondly the Indus was a useful highway of commerce. Moreover Lord Ellenborough was anxious to win a great victory in order to wash off the disgrace of the reverses in Afghanistan.

Sir Charles Napier was a staunch advocate of the policy of annexation of Sind. By his offensive attitude and unreasonable demands he goaded the Amirs into war. He attacked the British residency. This was what Napier wanted. In short, war broke out, the Amirs were defeated at Miani and Dabo and Sind was annexed to the British Empire in 1843. And the Amirs were sent into exile.


## CHAPTER XV

### LORD HARDINGE

#### 1844 – 1848

Lord Hardinge was a very experienced and veteran soldier. He had taken a distinguished part in the Peninsular War and was also present at the Battle of Waterloo. The most important event of his time was the *First Sikh War*, but during the very first year of his rule he introduced some useful reforms.

**Reforms.** (1) A railway scheme for India was drawn up. (2) The Ganges Canal was projected. (3) Education was extended and an Engineering College was started at Roorkee. (4) Efforts were made to stop *sati* and female infanticide in Indian states. (5) Human sacrifices among tribal tribes of Orissa were suppressed.

 **Q.** Briefly describe the causes, main events and result of the First Sikh War. (Very Important)

(P. U. 197)

**First Sikh War, 1845-46.**

**Causes.** (1) In 1839 Ranjit Singh the 'Lion of the Punjab' died, and with his death the glory of the Sikh Empire came to an end. There followed a period of anarchy in Punjab. For six years there was a reign of bloodshed and intrigues. The Khalsa army had grown very powerful. Several princes and ministers were assassinated. In 1840 Dalip Singh, the youngest son of Maharaja Ranjit Singh, a child of 5 years, came to the throne with his mother Jindan as his regent and Lal Singh as his minister. But Rani Jindan and other Sikh chiefs were terribly afraid of the growing

by the Lahore Durbar. When he was asked to render accounts he tendered his resignation. Sardas Kahan Singh was sent to relieve him. He was accompanied by two English officers (Agnew and Anderson) who were to help him in taking over charge. These officers were murdered by a discharged sepoy. Subsequently Mulraj himself raised the standard of revolt and proclaimed a religious war. At this Sir Herbert Edwardes, an English officer, raised a small army and besieged Mulraj in Multan. When the news reached Lahore, the Durbar sent Sher Singh of Attari with a large force to assist the besieging army. But Sher Singh joined Mulraj. In the meanwhile the revolt had spread throughout the province, and the Sikhs were up in arms against the English. They even bought the help of Afghans by surrendering Peshawar to Dost Mohd., the Amir of Afghanistan.

**Events.** Lord Gough was Commander-in-Chief of the British armies. In the beginning there were insignificant and indecisive battles near *Rumnagar* and *Sadulapur* on the banks of the Chenab. But the first great battle of this war was fought at Chillianwala where the Sikhs gave a splendid account of themselves and both sides claimed victory, though both of them suffered heavy losses. When the news of this battle reached England, Sir Charles Napier was sent to supersede Gough. But before he arrived, Gough had inflicted crushing defeat on the Sikhs at Gujrat and retrieved his reputation. The artillery played a great part in this battle and so it is also known as the "battle of the guns." In the next time Multan also had fallen. The Afghans who had come to the help of the Sikhs were chased back to their hills. At last the Sikh army laid down arms and the war was over.

**Results.** 1. On March 29, 1849 the Punjab was annexed to the British empire. (2) A pension of £50,000 a year was settled on Maharaja Dilip Singh who was sent to England where he embraced Christianity. (3) Mulraj was sentenced to death, but this punishment was later commuted to transportation. But he committed suicide on the way.

### Second Burmese War, 1852.

**Cause.** After the First Burmese War many English traders had settled in Rangoon. The Burmese government did not treat them properly and whenever they complained to the king he turned a deaf ear to their complaints. In 1852 Lord Dalhousie declared war.

**Events.** After brief actions Rangoon and Prome fell. The Province of Pegu was annexed and the war was over.

**Result.** Tennaserim, Arakan and Pegu were constituted into a new province, *viz.*, Lower Burma with Rangoon as its capital.

**Doctrines of Lapse.** In accordance with the provisions of the Subsidiary Alliance the British Government of India was responsible for the protection of the feudatory states from internal rebellions or external invasions. The result was that some of the rulers of these states fell into luxury, and misgoverned their states. Lord Dalhousie was of the opinion that if such states were annexed, the condition of their subjects would be improved. He, therefore, began the policy of annexing such states. The Doctrine of Lapse was that "*if the ruler of a state created by the British Government in India should die without male issue his adopted son would not succeed him, but the state would pass back or lapse to the British power and the adopted son would inherit only the personal property of the chief.*" There was nothing new about this system. Other Governors General, (William Bentinck for instance) had also acted on it. Lord Dalhousie followed it rather rigidly.

As chance would have it during Lord Dalhousie's term of office many such rulers of states died without male issue, and seven states were annexed. The most important of these were Satara, Jhansi and Nagpur. (The four small states were Jaitpur in Bundelkhand, Sambhalpur in Orissa, Baghat near Simla and Udaipur in C. P.) This Doctrine of Lapse made the rulers of Indian states suspicious about the motives of the British; they feared that sooner or later all the Indian states would be annexed. This doctrine proved one of the most important causes of the Mutiny.

---

\* Baghat and Udaipur were afterwards restored by Lord Canning.



(2) The Governor-General was relieved of the duty of administering the province of Bengal. A Lieutenant-Governor was appointed to carry on these duties.

(3) A competitive examination was instituted in England for admission into the Indian Civil Service.

(4) A Legislative Council consisting of the officials only was also constituted.

**Reforms.** Lord Dalhousie introduced many useful reforms, the most important of which were the following :—

1. **The public Works Department.** Lord Dalhousie founded the Public Works Department, the object of which is to keep the existing roads, canals, bridges, etc., in a proper state of repairs and construct new ones. This department constructed many roads, canals and bridges. The Ganges Canal, the largest canal in the world, and many other canals were constructed. The Grand Trunk Road from Calcutta to Peshawar besides some other small pacca roads was made.

2. **Post and Telegraph Office.** Post and Telegraph Offices on modern lines were established throughout the length and breadth of the country, which made communication easier. A uniform system of postage (*i.e.*, half-anna for an ordinary envelope) was also introduced. Before this postage was charged according to distance. Dalhousie also introduced the electric telegraph system which has almost annihilated distance.

3. **Railways.** The first Railway was built in 1853 between Bombay and Thana, a distance of twenty miles. Now there is a network of railways in India. The Railways have made travelling easy and comfortable.

4. **Education.** Lord Dalhousie paid special attention to the problem of education. In 1854 the well-known *minute* of Sir Charles Wood, President of the Board of Control reached India. This minute is considered the foundation stone of the educational policy of the British Government. The main provisions of this scheme were (i) that an Education Department should be established in every province, (ii) that Universities should be established at Calcutta,

Bombay and Madras, (iii) that government schools should be started in every district and provision should be made for instruction in Indian languages, (iv) that private institutions should be helped with grants-in-aid. Lord Dalhousie carried out this scheme and Education Departments were established.

### 5. Social Reforms

(1) The marriage of Hindu widows was legalised. (2) It was also enacted that if a Hindu changed his religion, he would still inherit his ancestral property.

**Q.** What were the outstanding achievements of Lord Dalhousie.

**Lord Dalhousie's Achievements.** Lord Dalhousie was one of the most distinguished Governors-General of India. He possessed immense power of work and was devoted to his duty. *His chief achievement is the vast expansion of the British empire in India and the introduction of reforms.*

Lord Dalhousie had been in India only a few months when he had to face a war with the brave Sikhs. But he made preparations on a grand and extensive scale to meet the danger. The Sikhs were totally defeated and the *Punjab was annexed in 1849.*

After this he had to fight the Second Burmese War, and as a result the English occupied Pegu and Prome. *The province of Lower Burma was constituted.*

In addition to the Punjab and Lower Burma, Lord Dalhousie made several other annexations. *Satara, Jhansi, Waggur, etc., (seven states in all) were annexed by lapse, Oudh, on account of misgovernment and Berar, in payment of the expenses of the contingent force.* Thus Lord Dalhousie greatly extended the British empire. Very few changes have occurred in the map of India since his time.

Besides annexations and extension of the British empire Lord Dalhousie introduced several reforms. He established the Railways, Post and Telegraph and Public Works Departments. By railways and telegraph the various outlying parts of India were knit together and a feeling of common nation-

ality grew up. The present Educational System was also started in the time of Lord Dalhousie. The former Governors-General had either extended the British empire or introduced reforms. *Lord Dalhousie did more to extend the British empire and introduced more reforms than any of his predecessors.* For this reason for a long time the saying went, "Modern India is the creation of Lord Dalhousie."


But it cannot be denied that these annexations and hasty reforms of Lord Dalhousie made the Indian rulers suspicious of the intentions of the British. Lord Dalhousie is responsible to a great extent for the mutiny of 1857.

## CHAPTER XVII

### LORD CANNING

#### 1856—1858

Lord Dalhousie was succeeded by Lord Canning. The most important event of his time was the Mutiny of 1857.

 Describe fully the causes, events, and consequences of the Indian Mutiny. (Important) (P. U. 1913-19-22-27. 31-35.)

The Mutiny, 1857. The mutiny was a rebellion of the army which took place at a time when there was a great deal of unrest and suspicion in the public mind owing to the policy of Lord Dalhousie. This led to the rapid spread of the mutiny. Fortunately for the British, the mutiny was not widespread.

**Causes.** The causes of the mutiny can be divided under four heads:—

- (1) Political
- (2) Social and Religious
- (3) Military
- (4) Miscellaneous.

1. **Political Causes.** The policy of annexations pursued by Lord Dalhousie had caused a great deal of unrest in the minds of the Indian rulers who were growing suspicious

of the intentions of the British. (1) Nana Sahib, the adopted son of the last Peshwa, was deeply offended because he was not allowed the pension of his adoptive father. (2) The youthful Rani of Jhansi was aggrieved since she was not allowed to adopt a son. (3) The annexation of Oudh had given offence to the *Taluqdars* there. (4) Bahadur Shah II, the titular emperor at Delhi was chafing that after his death, his family would have to vacate the palace and the fort. (5) The Marathas were also aggrieved because their states of Nagpur and Satara had been annexed.

**2. Social and Religious Causes.** Western civilization had made the people suspicious of the designs of the British Government. (1) The introduction of railways and (2) telegraph, (3) the activities of the missionaries. (4) the expansion of western education, (5) the suppression of *sati*, (6) the legalization of the remarriage of Hindu widows, (7) the right to inherit ancestral property even when a Hindu changed his religion, were measures which led people to believe that the British government was bent upon converting them to Christianity. And the cry was raised, "Religion and traditions in danger!"

**3. Military Causes.** One of the main causes of the mutiny was the discontent in the Indian soldiery. (1) Their salaries were small and they were not treated as in former times. (2) An Act called the *General Service Enlistment Act* was then recently passed which empowered the Government to send Indian soldiers wherever the need arose, but the Brahman sepoys thought it a sacrilege to cross the sea. (3) The Bengal army consisted mostly of Oudh people who were deeply offended on account of the annexation of Oudh. (4) The large percentage of Indians in the army had also encouraged them. The number of Indian sepoys was five times that of the British soldiers.

#### 4. Miscellaneous Causes.

(1) It was a well-known saying current in those days that Delhi changed its rulers every hundred years. For this reason a rumour had spread that the British power would come to an end a hundred years after the Battle of Plassey.

(2) Several mischievous people were on the look-out for an opportunity that there should be some disturbance. These people had been inciting the public, especially the soldiers to rebellion.

**Immediate Cause.** *The greased cartridges.* At this time new rifles called the *Enfield rifles*, had been supplied to the sepoys in which *greased cartridges* were to be used. In order to fit them to the rifles the soldiers had to bite the end of these cartridges with their teeth. A rumour spread that these cartridges were greased with the fat of the cow and the pig and the sepoys believed that this was intentionally done to defile their religion. This was a signal for outbreaks in several cantonments.

**Events. Beginning.** First of all there were some outbreaks at Barrackpore, Barhampur etc., but the mutiny is believed to have begun on *Sunday, the 10th May, 1857 at Meerut*. There on 9th May 85 sepoys refused to use these greased cartridges and were sentenced to ten years' imprisonment. On the 10th their comrades shot down their English officers, stormed the jail, released the prisoners and came to Delhi. Thus the mutiny began.


The main centres of the mutiny were *Delhi, Cawnpore, Lucknow and Central India*.

1. **Delhi.** The mutineers of Meerut, when they reached Delhi, placed the old Mughal King Bahadur Shah on the throne and put a great many English officers and soldiers to death. Mutineers from other cantonments, too, now reached Delhi and occupied the city. Fortunately the Punjab under Sir John Lawrence remained loyal and with the help of the Punjab arms the English laid siege to the city of Delhi. After a siege of three months, Sir John Nicholson reduced the city, though he himself was killed just at the moment of victory. Bahadur Shah was taken prisoner and deported to Rangoon where he died in 1859. His two sons and a grandson were shot dead before his very eyes.

English threw themselves at his mercy. Nana Sahib promised them a safe conduct to Allahabad but when these people were getting into the boats, they were shot down. Many English women and children were murdered in cold blood. Finally *General Havelock* defeated Nana Sahib who was never heard of or seen again.

3. **Lucknow.** At Lucknow the mutineers besieged Sir Henry Lawrence and all other English men and women in the Residency. Sir Henry Lawrence was wounded by a shell and died within a few days of the siege, but the garrison held out. General Havelock and General Outram came to their rescue but were themselves besieged in the Residency. Finally *Sir Colin Campbell* conquered Lucknow.

4. **Central India.** The mutineers of Central India and Bundelkhand were led by Lakshmi Bai, the young Rani of Jhansi and Tantia Topi, the commander of Nana Sahib's forces. *Sir Hugh Rose* marched against them. The Rani proved herself the bravest and most capable leader of the rebels. She fought gallantly and fell fighting, but Tantia Topi was defeated and fled away. He was captured, tried and hanged. Thus the mutiny came to an end.

 **Results of the Mutiny.** 1. The most important result of the mutiny was that *the rule of the East India Company came to an end and India came directly under the rule of the British Crown and Parliament.* An Act was passed in 1858 which abolished both the Board of Control and the Court of Directors and substituted in their stead the *Secretary of State for India.* He was to be advised by a council of 15 members known as the *India Council.* The Governor-General came also to be called the *Viceroy.* Lord Canning was the first Viceroy.

2. The British Government came to know of the defects in their administration which they set about improving.

3. The Indian princes were given an assurance that their territories would in no case be annexed to the British empire and they were even permitted to adopt sons. The doctrine of lapse was at last discarded.

4. Full religious liberty was guaranteed to the people.

Q. Write a short note on Queen Victoria's Proclamation.

Queen Victoria's Proclamation, 1st November, 1858.

After the mutiny was suppressed and the Government of India was transferred from the Company to the British Crown, an important proclamation was issued in the name of Queen Victoria and was read out by Lord Canning at Allahabad on 1st November 1858. The main provisions of this proclamation were as follows:—

1. Indian Princes were given every assurance that their territories would, in no case, be annexed to the British empire. They were also given the right to adopt sons.
2. An assurance was given to the general public that their religion would in no way be interfered with and that they would enjoy full religious liberty.
3. It was also proclaimed that no Indian would be debarred from holding a post under government for which he was otherwise qualified merely on the ground of his colour, religion or place of birth.
4. A general pardon was granted to all the mutineers except those who had been guilty of the murder of British subjects.

# INDIA UNDER THE CROWN VICEROYS

## CHAPTER I

### FROM CANNING TO NORTHBROOK 1858—1876

Lord Canning, 1858-62. Lord Canning who had been the last Governor General under the Company was appointed the first Viceroy and Governor-General under the Crown. He was opposed to the policy of vindictiveness against the mutineers and as far as lay in his power he treated them leniently. The English people sarcastically called him "*Clemency Canning*." Lord Canning introduced many reforms.

**Reforms. 1. The Army.** The army was reorganised. The royal forces and Company's forces were amalgamated. The proportion of British soldiers was increased and the recruitment of high caste Hindus in the army who had been mainly responsible for the mutiny was stopped. The artillery was placed in charge of the British troops.

**2. Bengal Rent Act.** The Permanent Settlement of Bengal had left the tenants at the mercy of the landlord's. They could be evicted and their rents could be enhanced. Canning was anxious to help the tenants. So in 1859, the Bengal Rent Act was passed by which the position of tenants became more secure.

**3. Indian Penal Code.** In 1860 the Indian Penal Code which had been drafted by Macaulay came into force.

**4. High Courts.** In 1861 High Courts were established one each at Calcutta, Bombay and Madras. They replaced the old Supreme Court and Sadar Dewani and Sadar



Nizamats Courts set up during the time of Warren Hastings as the final courts of appeal.

5. *Finance.* On account of the mutiny the Company's treasury was depleted. Financial experts\* were sent out from England, who levied many taxes, effected economies in civil and military expenditure and thus stabilized the financial position of the government.

6. *The Indian Councils Act.* In 1861 was passed the Indian Councils Act, whose main provisions were:—

(1) In the Executive Council of the Governor-General separate departments were entrusted to individual Councillors. This ensured efficiency in business.

(2) The Legislative Council of the Governor-General was enlarged, and it was decided that half the members should be non-officials. These non-official members were nominated.

(3) The power of legislation was restored to provinces of Bengal, Bombay and Madras.

*Note :* Before he became Viceroy Lord Canning had established the three Universities of Calcutta, Madras and Bombay.

In 1862 Lord Canning returned to England. His health had completely broken down under the stress of the great exertion during the mutiny. He died only 3 months after his return.

## LORD ELGIN I

### 1862—1863

Lord Canning was succeeded by Lord Elgin I, but after about a year and a half he died at Dharmasala in November 1863. During his time the *Wahabis* on the north-western frontier rose in revolt. They fought bravely but were after all defeated.

---

\* In 1859 James Wilson, a leading economist came out to India. But he died after 8 months only. After his death his work was continued by his successor Samuel Laing.

## SIR JOHN LAWRENCE

### 1864—1868

Elgin was succeeded by Sir John Lawrence. He had been Chief Commissioner of the Punjab and had helped a great deal in the suppression of the mutiny. The following were the chief events of his time :—

1. **War with Bhutan.** Soon after his arrival war broke out with Bhutan. Its cause was that from time to time the Bhutanis had raided the British territories and kidnapped people whom they made slaves. To keep them off this Lord Elgin sent an officer to them for negotiations. The Bhutanis kidnapped him also. War was, therefore, declared. This war was soon over and the Bhutanis ceded the district of Duar (*i.e.*, the territory containing the passes leading into Assam) to the British in return for an annual subsidy. This territory is now dotted with tea-gardens.

2. **Famine in Orissa, 1866.** In 1866 Orissa was visited by a severe famine. Over a million people died, and the government, owing to the unsatisfactory means of communication, could not make satisfactory arrangements for their relief. The famine was followed by devastating floods which added to the misery of the people. After this the government improved the means of communication in Orissa, so that corn might speedily be sent to the famine-stricken areas.

3. **Policy towards Afghanistan.** As regards Afghanistan Sir John Lawrence followed what is called the *Policy of Masterly Inactivity*, *i.e.*, friendly relations should be maintained with the Amir of Afghanistan but the internal affairs of that country should not be interfered with. Accordingly when in 1863 on the death of Dost Mohammed there was the war of succession between his two sons, Lawrence kept aloof on purpose. He announced that the British Government of India would recognise whichever claimant came out victorious. Eventually when Sher Ali triumphed, Lawrence recognised him and sent him arms and money, but he declined to conclude a permanent treaty with him.

*Note :* Sir John Lawrence retired in January 1869 and was raised to peerage on his return home.

1876 to 1878. The Government spent large sums for the relief of the famine stricken people, but even then some 50 lakhs of lives were lost. A Famine Commission was appointed which suggested measures to prevent famines in future.

3. **Vernacular Press Act.** In 1878 the Government of Lord Lytton passed the Vernacular Press Act which required Vernacular papers either to enter into a bond not to publish articles which might tend to promote hatred or disaffection against the Government or submit their proofs to a censor. This act gave deep offence to the Indians because newspapers published in English were not affected by it.

4. **M.A.O. College Aligarh.** In 1877 Lord Lytton laid the foundation stone of the Muhammadan Anglo-Oriental College, Aligarh. The founder and life-spirit of this college was Sir Sayyad Ahmad Khan, the greatest leader of the Muslims in the 19th century. In 1920 this college was raised to the status of a University.

5. **Second Afghan War, 1878-1880.**

**Causes.** Russia was advancing towards Afghanistan and it was a matter of great concern for the Indian Government. Lord Lytton came to India with definite instructions to establish friendly relations with Sher Ali. The latter, too, was anxious and willing to enter into a treaty with the English. But the English Government insisted that he should receive a British Resident at his court. To this the Amir objected for he knew that the Pathans would not tolerate a British Resident. Lord Lytton was however, adamant. So the Amir turned towards the Russians. In the meantime by an arrangement with the Khan of Kalat the British occupied Quetta, which made it easy to invade Afghanistan by way of Kandhar. At this Sher Ali openly invited a Russian mission to Kabul. Now Lytton also sent a mission which was stopped at the entrance to the Khyber pass by the Afghans. Lord Lytton regarded it as an insult and declared war.

**Events.** The English armies attacked Afghanistan on three sides, (*viz.*, by way of Khyber, Kurram, and Bolan passes). Sher Ali fled towards Russian territory where he

died. The English recognised Yakub Khan, a son of Sher Ali as Amir and concluded the Treaty of Gandamak (1879) with him. By this treaty the Amir consented to receive a Resident at Kabul. He also recognised the British occupation of the passes and agreed to have his foreign policy controlled by the British. In return for this he was to receive an annual subsidy of six lakhs of rupees. Moreover the English promised to support him against any foreign aggression.

For some time all went well, but in September 1879, the Afghans suddenly rose in revolt, massacred the English resident, Sir Louis Cavagnari and his party, and the war was renewed. The British General Roberts occupied Kabul. Yakub Khan surrendered and was sent to India as a state prisoner. The war was going on when Lord Lytton resigned and was succeeded by Lord Ripon.

After the surrender of Yakub Khan his brother Ayub Khan carried on the war. He defeated an English army at Maiwand. But ultimately he was defeated by his cousin Abdur Rahman.

Result. Abdur Rahman, a nephew of Sher Ali was recognised as the Amir and the war was over. Abdur Rahman was given an annual subsidy of 12 lakhs. Ayub Khan, later on, was persuaded to come to India as a state prisoner.

## LORD RIPON

1880—1884

Q. Summarise the principal events of the administration of Lord Ripon. (P. U. 1919-29)

Or,

Justify the statement that Lord Ripon's attitude towards the Indians was singularly sympathetic.

(P. U. 1929-39)

Lord Ripon, 1880-84. Lord Ripon was a liberal statesman who sympathised with the just aspirations of the Indians. He did much to ameliorate the condition of the people and was very popular. The following were the chief events of his time :—

## 2. Third Burmese War.

**Causes.** 1. The main cause of this war was that Theebaw, the king of Burma, had granted special trade concessions to the French and French influence in Burma was on the increase. This was detrimental to British interests.

2. Theebaw imposed a heavy fine (of 23 lakhs of rupees) on the British Bombay and Burma Trading Company and ordered the arrest of its officers. At this Lord Dufferin declared war.

**Events.** An English force sailed up the Irrawady and occupied Mandalay without meeting with any resistance. The king of Burma surrendered unconditionally and was sent to India as a state prisoner. By a proclamation on 1st January 1886, Burma was annexed to the British empire. But after this a guerilla war broke out which lasted for two years. At last peace was restored in the country.

**Note :—**In 1826 after the First Burmese War the English acquired Arakan and Tenasserim; in 1852 after the Second Burmese War, they acquired Pegu and the three provinces were constituted into one province of Lower Burma. Now in 1886 Upper Burma was also annexed, so that the whole of Burma came under the English.

## 3. The Indian National Congress, 1885. The Indian National Congress is the most important political body in India composed of members from all the communities.

This Congress was founded by some educated Indians and a few Englishmen, the most notable among whom was Mr. A. O. Hume. The Congress holds its session once every year at some important place. (Of late years even insignificant villages have been selected for holding its sessions). The first session was held in December 1885 at Bombay under the presidentship of Mr. W. C. Bonnerji.

In the beginning the demands of the Congress were that the Legislative Councils should be enlarged and more Indians should be taken in them; that the Indians should be appointed to the higher posts in large numbers; that the military expenditure should be reduced etc. The attitude of the government, too, was in those days, sympathetic. But as the attitude of the government changed, the angle

of vision of the Congress also changed. At present the aim of the Congress is to secure full independence.

4. **Jubilee of Queen Victoria.** In 1887 Queen Victoria had completed 50 years of her reign. Throughout the length and breadth of the country her Golden Jubilee was celebrated with great *eclat*.

## LORD LANSDOWNE

1888—1894

The following were the important events of the time of Lord Lansdowne :—

1. **Demarcation of Afghan Boundary.** In 1892, Lansdowne sent a mission under Sir Mortimer Durand to Kabul to settle the boundary between Afghanistan and British India. The southern and eastern boundaries of Afghanistan were fixed by mutual agreement (1893). This boundary line is called the *Durand Line*.

The Durand Line brought certain territories which had hitherto acknowledged the nominal suzerainty of the Amir of Kabul, within the British boundary. These territories are inhabited by fierce and warlike Afghan tribes (like Atridis, Mahmands, etc.) who will risk anything to maintain their independence.

2. **Rebellion in Manipur.** There was a dispute about succession in the State of Manipur in Assam. The Chief Commissioner of Assam was sent there to settle the dispute, but the *Senapati* of the state assassinated him. At this an English force was sent. Manipur was occupied, the *Senapati* and his supporters were hanged, a young boy was set on the *gaddi* and the state was placed under the Resident during the minority of the raja.

3. **Indian Councils Act.** In 1892 was passed the Indian Councils Act, the main provisions of which were as follows :—

(1) The number of non-official members was increased both in the Imperial (at present called Central) and the Provincial Legislative Councils, but the official members still formed the majority.

(2) The Universities, the District and Municipal Boards and Chambers of Commerce were empowered to return members to these Councils.

(3) The members of these Legislative Councils were given the right to ask questions and discuss the annual budget within certain limits.

## LORD ELGIN II

1894–1899

Lord Elgin II was the son of Lord Elgin I. The most important events of his time were the following :—

1. The boundaries of Burma, China and Siam were fixed.

2. In 1896 Plague broke out in Bombay. In course of time it spread throughout the country.

3. There were severe famines in some territories, especially in Bikaner.


4. There was a succession dispute in the State of Chitral but the disturbance was soon put down.

5. After the demarcation of the Durand Line, the British Government, in order to bring the independent Pathan tribes under subjection, began to build roads in their territories and establish military posts on the tops of the hills. At this the whole frontier got ablaze in 1897. The Afridis blocked the Khyber Pass. In the end the tribes were defeated and the Khyber Pass was occupied. The operations cost a great deal and the Pathan tribes, though defeated, were far from subdued.

## CHAPTER III

### LORD CURZON

1899–1905

 Q. Give a short account of the viceroyalty of Lord Curzon. (P. U. 1915-20-23-27-28-34-37)

Lord Curzon. Lord Curzon was about 40 when he was appointed Viceroy. He was a most capable, courageous

and brilliant man, and was, by far, the ablest Viceroy. He had widely travelled in Asia, had personal acquaintance with several Asiatic rulers and had visited India four times before he became Viceroy. Thus he was thoroughly acquainted with Indian problems even before his appointment. He introduced reforms in every department and carried on the government efficiently.

In the opening years of his period of administration there was a severe famine owing to the failure of monsoons in 1899-1900. Large sums of money were spent on the relief of the famine-stricken people, even then millions of people died. Plague also worked havoc in the country.

**His Foreign Policy.** Lord Curzon's foreign policy was mainly concerned with the North-West Frontier tribes, Afghanistan, Iran and Tibet.

**The Frontier Policy.** The North-Western Frontier of India (i.e., the territory between the Trans-Indus settled districts and the Durand line) is inhabited by fierce independent Pathan tribes. In 1897 they rose in revolt when the British began to build forts on the tops of their hills and roads in their territories. The policy of Lord Curzon was to establish permanent peace in that area, and to put a stop to the frequent tribal disturbances. To this end he adopted the following measures:—

(i) He withdrew large numbers of British troops from the frontier outposts and substituted tribal levies trained and commanded by British officers. These levies were called *Militia*. They were made responsible for keeping the peace in their country. British forces were increased and concentrated behind the tribal area.

(ii) Railway lines were built up to Jamrud at the entrance to the Khyber Pass and Thal the gate of the Kurra Valley so that armies might be sent there when needed.

(iii) In 1901, a few districts (west of the Indus) were taken away from the Punjab and formed into a new province called the *North-West Frontier Province*. This province was placed directly under the Governor-General through a Chief Commissioner who acted as his Agent. At present the N. W. F. P. is a Governor's Province.



(b) *Friendly Relations with the Amir of Kabul.* Amir Abdur Rahman of Kabul died in 1901 and was succeeded by his son Habib-Ullah. Friendly relations were established with him and in compliance with his wishes the title of 'His Majesty' was conceded to him.

(c) *British influence in the Persian Gulf.* For the safety of the sea-route from England to India it is of great importance for the British to have general control over all the coastline from Aden to Baluchistan. For, if other European powers were to establish naval bases or fortified ports on the coast they could easily threaten British interests in India. During the time of Curzon several European nations, i.e., France, Russia, Turkey and Germany, were each trying to obtain a foothold in the Persian Gulf. So in 1903 Lord Curzon visited the Persian Gulf and took effective steps to safeguard British interests there. The efforts of other European powers to obtain some foothold all proved futile.

(d) *Tibet Expedition.* It was the traditional policy of the Tibetan Government not to allow foreigners to enter that country. But during the viceroyalty of Lord Curzon a Russian envoy was received at Lhasa and it appeared that the Tibetan government wanted to throw off the Chinese yoke and place herself under Russia. Lord Curzon did not like the growth of Russian influence so near the Indian borders. So in 1903 he sent an expeditionary force under Col. Younghusband to Tibet which occupied Lhasa. The Tibet Government was made to pay a war indemnity and the Chinese suzerainty over Tibet was confirmed. Thus Russian influence there was put an end to. This expedition led indirectly to an extension of geographical knowledge about that country.

**His Reforms.** Lord Curzon's viceroyalty is chiefly noted for the reforms, the most important of which were the following:—

1. *Financial Reforms.* (i) Salt tax was reduced to one half. (ii) The limit of taxable income was raised to one thousand instead of 500.

2. *Police Reforms.* (i) The salaries of policemen were raised. (ii) Training Schools for the recruits were established. (iii) Criminal Investigation Department (C.I.D.) was organised.

3. *Agrarian Reforms.* Lord Curzon also introduced reforms to help the peasantry whom he regarded as the backbone of India.

(i) The cultivators used to borrow money which they could not pay. The money-lenders then acquired their lands. Thus agriculturists who form the bulk of the Indian army were being reduced to utter poverty. The effects of this evil system were felt especially in the Punjab. Lord Curzon, in 1900, passed the Punjab Land Alienation Act which enacted that no non-agriculturist can buy land from an agriculturist, nor can he keep land in mortgage for more than twenty years, nor can the land of an agriculturist be attached in payment of debts.

(ii) To help the agriculturists in getting money at a low rate of interest Lord Curzon established Co-operative Societies in the country, and started Zamindara Banks.

(iii) He also founded an agricultural Research Institute to carry on research work and to improve the condition of Indian agriculture.

4.- *Department of Commerce and Industry.* Lord Curzon also established a new department of Commerce and Industry. This department extended the railways and encouraged industries in the country.

5. *Universities Act.* In 1904 was passed the Indian Universities Act, which brought about four important changes. (i) Universities were entrusted with the duty of teaching as well as examining candidates. (ii) Official element was increased in the management of the universities but elective system was also introduced for the appointment of fellows. (iii) More importance was attached to the teaching of science. (iv) Inspection of colleges was introduced.

6. *Ancient Monuments Preservations Act, 1904.* Lord Curzon passed the Ancient Monuments Preservation Act by which any injury done to certain selected ancient

monuments was declared an offence punishable by law. Moreover he founded the Archaeological Department for the preservation of ancient historical monuments and excavation of buried sites. This department has not only saved ancient historical buildings from destruction, but has also extended our knowledge of ancient Indian history by excavating sites of ancient towns like Taxila, Pataliputra, Harappa, Mohenjodaro etc.


7. *Imperial Cadet Corps.* Lord Curzon founded the Imperial Cadet Corps to give military training to boys of ruling families.

### Other Important Events

1. *Plague and Famine.* As already mentioned the opening years of the viceroyalty of Lord Curzon were marked by visitations of plague and famine which took a heavy toll of human beings. The famine affected the whole of western India but was particularly severe in Gujarat Kathiawar. The famine was, relieved but Plague continued throughout the whole of Lord Curzon's administration.

2. *Delhi Durbar of 1903.* In January 1901, Queen Victoria died and was succeeded by her son Edward VII. A magnificent durbar was held at Delhi on 1st January, 1903 and Edward VII was proclaimed the Emperor of India.

3. *Partition of Bengal.* Bengal, in those days was a big province with 78 million people and an area of about two lac (189000) square miles. Lord Curzon thought that this province was too big for one Lieutenant-Governor to efficiently administer. He, therefore, split it up into two provinces. East Bengal and Assam was constituted a separate province under a Lieutenant-Governor with Dacca as its capital. But the Bengalis started an intensive agitation. They argued that Lord Curzon's underlying motive was to weaken the Bengali nation. This agitation spread throughout India, and a movement for the boycott of British goods was started. During the time of Lord Minto there were a few bomb outrages. At last in 1911 King George V revoked it on the occasion of the Coronation Durbar.

 (d) *Resignation of Lord Curzon 1905.* In 1905 there was an acute difference of opinion between Lord Curzon and Lord Kitchener, the Commander-in-Chief of Indian forces about army organisation and the position of the military member of the Governor-General's Executive Council. Lord Kitchener was of the opinion that the Military member of the Governor-General's Executive Council should be none other than the Commander-in-Chief while Lord Curzon wanted a civilian. The Secretary of State accepted the views of Lord Kitchener. Lord Curzon, therefore, resigned.

**Estimate of his Work.** Lord Curzon was undoubtedly a great ruler. He left his deep impress upon every department of Indian administration. He possessed almost superhuman power of work. He introduced many reforms, some of which were certainly very useful. But his regime, on the whole, was a failure. The Indian Universities Act of 1904 which introduced greater government control in education and some other measures made him unpopular. The Partition of Bengal still further added to his unpopularity. The result of all this was that there was great unrest in the country and his successor Lord Minto II had to cope with a delicate situation.

---

## CHAPTER IV

### LORD MINTO II TO LORD CHELMSFORD

1905—1921

**Lord Minto II, 1905—10.** This Lord Minto was the great grandson of Lord Minto I who was Governor-General from 1807 to 1813. When he came to India, the whole country was seething with political unrest, and during his stay there were some bomb outrages. Lord Minto passed drastic laws to suppress revolutionary activities. But at the same time he introduced reforms in collaboration with Lord Morley, the then Secretary of State for India, in order to conciliate the moderate section of Indians. These reforms are known as Minto-Morley Reforms.

**Q. Write a note on the Minto-Morley Reforms.**

**Minto-Morley Reforms.** To give greater share to Indians in the government of their country, some reforms were introduced in 1909 known as the Minto-Morley Reforms. The important changes introduced were as follows :—

1. The provincial Legislative Councils were enlarged and the number of non-official members was raised higher than that of the officials.

2. The Imperial Legislative Council was enlarged. But there the officials remained in a majority.

3. The Muslims were given separate representation in most provinces.

4. The powers of the Legislative Councils were increased.

5. An Indian member was taken in the Executive Council of the Governor-General and in each of the provincial Executive Councils. The first Indian member of Governor-General's Executive Council was Sir S. P. Sinha (afterwards Lord Sinha of Raipur).

*Note* —To the India Council of the Secretary of State two Indians had already been appointed, one Hindu and one Muslim.

## LORD HARDINGE II

1910—1916

**Q. Briefly describe the events of the viceroyalty of Hardinge II.**

This Lord Hardinge was the grandson of Lord Hardinge in whose time the First Sikh War was fought. The following were the important events of his time :—

1. **Coronation Durbar, 1911.** In 1911 King George V together with Queen Mary came to India and on the 12th December 1911 a magnificent durbar was held at Delhi. The following important announcements were made on this occasion :—

(1) The Partition of Bengal was revoked ; Assam was again made a separate province and Bihar with Orissa and

Chota Nagpur was constituted a new province with Patna as its capital.

(2) Delhi was made the capital of India instead of Calcutta.

(3) Fifty lakhs of rupees were allotted for primary education.

(4) Indians were declared eligible for the Victoria Cross.

2. Bomb on the Viceroy, December 1912. In December 1912 when Lord Hardinge made his state entry into Delhi, the new capital, some revolutionary threw a bomb at him as his procession was passing through the Chandni Chauk. The Viceroy received only slight injuries and soon recovered. The assailant escaped and has not so far been traced. Lord Hardinge II displayed commendable self-possession and cool-headedness on this occasion.

3. India's Part in the Great War. In 1914 began the Great War in which India had also to take part. In this war India rendered meritorious services to England :—

(1) Indian soldiers were sent to France, Africa, Gallipoli, Palestine, Mesopotamia (now called Iraq), in fact, to every front. They gave a splendid account of themselves. Indian forces were sent to France at a time when the tide of German forces was fast advancing. They took their due share in stemming that tide. The conquests of Mesopotamia, Palestine and German East Africa were due entirely to Indian soldiery.

(2) Indians liberally contributed to the War Funds and people helped in recruitment. Mahatma Gandhi was awarded a silver medal in recognition of his services in recruitment.

(3) Indian rulers gave a good proof of their devotion and loyalty by helping the Government with men and money. Maharaja Partap Singh of Jodhpur and the Maharaja of Bikaner personally took part in this war. In 1918 the war came to an end, and in the Peace Conference the Maharaja of Bikaner and Sir S. P. Sinha represented India.

**Result.** By the Treaty of Rawalpindi the following terms were settled :—

(1) Afghanistan was recognised as an independent state in her foreign policy. The Amir could make treaties with other countries

(2) The annual subsidy granted to the Amir was stopped, nor was he permitted to import arms, etc. through India.

*Note :—*By a subsequent treaty the right of importing arms was restored to the Amir.



**Government of India Act, 1919.** In 1919 Parliament of England passed a law known as the Government of India Act, for the better Government of the country. The reforms introduced as a result of this Act are known as Montagu-Chelmsford Reforms or Montford Reforms. The important changes were as follows :—

1. **Provincial Government.** (i) *The most notable change in the Provincial Government was the establishment of Dyarchy.* That is, the whole Provincial Government was spilt up into two divisions :—Reserved Subjects and Transferred Subjects. The Reserved Subjects comprised Irrigation, Police, Jails, etc., and were placed directly under the Governor and his Executive Council. The Transferred Subjects included Education, Public Health, Agriculture, Industries, Local Self-Government, etc., and they were placed under Indian ministers who were appointed from among the elected members of the Council and were responsible to it.

(ii) The Provincial Legislative Councils were enlarged and the number of elected members was fixed at 70% at least.

(iii) The life of these Councils was fixed at three years, but the Governor could extend the term.

(iv) The Governors were given wide powers ; they could *veto* bills passed by the council and *certify* bills rejected by it.

2. **Central Government.** (i) The most notable change effected in the Central Government was that the Legislature was made bi-cameral. The upper chamber was called the *Council of State*, and the lower one the *Legislative Assembly*. The number of members of the Council of State was 10 of whom 33 were to be elected. The Legislative Assembly consisted of 140 (later raised to 144) members of whom 100 (later raised to 104) were to be elected. Any bill to become law was to be passed by both the houses.

(ii) New elections for the Legislative Assembly were to take place every *three years*, and for the Council of State every *five years*.

(iii) The Governor-General's Executive Council was enlarged\*. But this Executive Council was not responsible to the legislature.

(iv) The Governor-General was given wide powers. He could veto a bill passed by both the Houses or certify a bill rejected by the legislature. He was also authorised to issue *Ordinances* which had the force of law for six months.

3. **The India Council.** The number of Indian members in the India Council was raised and it was decided that the Secretary of State and his staff should be paid out of the British treasury.

4. **Miscellaneous.** (i) A High Commissioner for India was appointed who was to hold his office in London and whose duties were to look after Indian trade in Europe, to buy stores for the Indian Government, to float loans in England for the Government of India and to look after Indian students resident in England.

(ii) It was also decided that after ten years a Commission would visit India to ascertain how far the reforms had been successful and whether any further reforms should be granted.

\*By a convention it was decided that the number of Indian members must be three at least.



*my introduced.* But it did not propose any change in the Central Government. No political party considered those recommendations satisfactory.

3. **Civil Disobedience.** In 1929 at the Lahore session, the Indian National Congress under the presidentship of Pt. Jawahar Lal Nehru passed a resolution of complete Independence for India and decided to start civil disobedience. Accordingly in April 1930 Mahatma Gandhi led the movement violating the salt laws. At other places too, salt was made by violating the law. Soon this movement gathered strength and thousands of people were sent to jail.

4. **First Round Table Conference, 1930-31.** Seeing that the report of the Simon Commission had been condemned by every political party and had caused a great deal of unrest in the country the British Government called a Round Table Conference in London to draw up a constitution for India. Representatives from British India, and Indian States together with English politicians took part in this conference. But the Civil Disobedience movement was going on and the Congress sent no representatives. The recommendations of this Conference were better than those of the Simon Commission, but they, too, were not found satisfactory.

5. **Gandhi-Irwin Pact.** In March 1931 Mahatma Gandhi and Lord Irwin arrived at an understanding and concluded what is known as the Gandhi-Irwin Pact. Mahatma Gandhi called off the Civil Disobedience movement. Lord Irwin released the political prisoners and the salt laws were amended. Mahatma Gandhi also agreed to take part in the Second Round Table Conference.

6 **Sarda Act, 1929** This bill was introduced by Rai Bahadur Har Bilas Sarda in 1929 and was duly passed. By this Act the minimum age for marriage was fixed at 18 for males and 14 for females.

In 1931 Lord Irwin retired. He is now Lord Halifax.

## LORD WILLINGDON

### 1931—1936

**Q.** Briefly describe the important events of the administration of Lord Willingdon.

Lord Willingdon, who, succeeded Lord Irwin had already served in India. He had been Governor first of Bombay and then of Madras. From 1926-30 he had been Governor-General of Canada. The important events of his administration were the following :—

**Second Round Table Conference, 1931.** The Congress did not take part in the first Round Table Conference. Since Congress is the most influential political body in India, it was considered advisable to convene a Second Round Table Conference. This conference was held in 1931 and Mahatama Gandhi participated in it as the representative of the Congress. But this conference could not solve the communal problem. That is, it could not arrive at a decision whether the electorates should be joint or separate, nor could it agree on the number of seats allotted to the various communities in the central and provincial legislatures. At last the solution of this problem was left to the discretion of Mr. Ramsay Macdonald, the then Prime Minister.

**Communal Award, August 1932.** In August 1932 the Prime Minister Mr. Ramsay Macdonald gave his decision, that is, he fixed seats for the various communities in the provincial as well as central legislatures. Separate electorates were decided upon and the Depressed Classes were given separate representation. This decision is known as the Communal Award. It has satisfied neither the Hindus nor the Sikhs because they believe that gross injustice has been done to them. But so long as the communities do not come to an understanding among themselves, there can be no change in the Communal Award.

**Poona Pact.** The Communal Award gave the Depressed Classes separate franchise from the caste Hindus. Mahatama Gandhi entered a strong protest against this since he thought that it was a device to separate them from the Hindus. To

But for his consultation there will be not less than three and not more than six Counsellors who will be nominated by the Secretary of State. The term of office of these Counsellors will be five years and they will not be eligible for re-nomination.

4. Miscellaneous (1) A Federal Court has been established which will decide disputes between Provincial and Central Governments and hear appeals against the decisions of the High Courts.

(2) The Railways have been placed under a *Railway Board*, and a *Reserve Bank* has been established to stabilize the financial condition.

(3) *Burma* has been separated from India and two new provinces *Orissa* and *Sind* have been created.

**Earthquakes.** On 15th January 1934 there was a terrible earthquake in Bihar. The loss of life and property was enormous. Many villages and towns were wiped out of existence.

On 31st May 1935 there was an even worse earthquake in Quetta and the surrounding territory. In the twinkling of an eye the beautiful city of Quetta was no more than a mass of ruins. Thousands of people lost their lives. On both these occasions the British Government started relief measures and the general public, too, gave generous help.

**Silver Jubilee of King George V.** In May 1935 King George V completed twenty-five years of his reign. On 6th and 7th May his Silver Jubilee was celebrated throughout the length and breadth of the country with great *eclat*.

**Edward VIII.** Shortly after his Jubilee King George V died on 20th January 1936 and was succeeded by his eldest son who ascended the throne as Edward VIII. He was a bachelor at the time of his accession.

## CHAPTER VI

### LORD LINLITHGOW

1936—1943

Lord Linlithgow came out as Viceroy in 1936. Before he was appointed Viceroy he had come out to India as the President of the Agricultural Commission during the time of Lord Irwin. He was very keen on improving the breed of bulls and took special interest in the village uplift movement. Some of the important events of his viceroyalty were :—

1. **Abdication of Edward VIII.** A few months after his accession King Edward VIII made up his mind to marry an American woman Mrs. Simpson who had twice been divorced. In this connection he had a sharp difference of opinion with his ministers and on the 10th December 1936 he abdicated. He was succeeded by his younger brother George VI. He was created the Duke of Windsor and is now married to Mrs. Simpson.

2. **Introduction of Reforms.** Since 1st April 1937 reforms have been introduced in India. Provincial Autonomy has been established but Federation has not yet been established in the centre.

3. **New Ministries.** According to the new constitution ministries were established in the eleven major provinces. Out of these eight (U. P., Bihar, Assam, Orissa, Madras, Bombay, C. P., and N. W. F. P.) were Congress ministries and the remaining three non-Congress ministries. The British officers heartily co-operated with the Congress ministries, although at one time the situation grew so tense over the question of the release of political prisoners that the Congress ministries were within an inch of resigning.

4. **The Effect of the Second Great War.** On 3rd September 1939 war broke out once more between Great Britain and Germany. The *immediate effect* of this war was that prices began to rise by leaps and bounds, so much so that the Government had to intervene. A stern warning was issued to shopkeepers and wholesale dealers. At present

prices of certain commodities are controlled by Government and shopkeepers charging higher prices are prosecuted. Another effect was that there was a sharp difference of opinion between the Government and the Congress ministries. Efforts were made to come to an amicable understanding. The Viceroy had interviews with Mahatma Gandhi and other political leaders, but they could not come to an agreement. At this the Congress ministries resigned. Most of these provinces are now governed by the Governors alone. A third effect was that the Government, as is usual on such occasions, passed the Defence of India Act, by which all activities which might injure the interests of the British Government or hinder war efforts have been declared unlawful.

5. **Enlargement of Viceroy's Executive Council.** To win over Indian public opinion in order to stimulate war efforts the Executive Council of the Viceroy has been considerably enlarged. At present there are 15 members of whom as many as eleven are Indians. Even the Defence Member is an Indian (Sir Feroz Khan Noon).

6. **Cripps's Visit.** Sir Stafford Cripps, a leading member of the British Cabinet visited India in March 1942 and held consultations with the representatives of the various political organisations like the Congress, the Muslim League, etc., regarding the constitution of India after the war and any changes to be effected during the war. Unfortunately the political leaders of India could not see eye to eye with him and the negotiations were broken off.

7. **Hur Menace in Sind.** Hurs, a fanatical sect created a serious disturbance in Sind and committed a number of murders. In June, 1942 martial law had to be declared over a part of Sind. Their activities are being checked but they are not yet wholly subdued.

8. **Famine in Bengal.** In 1943 Bengal was visited by a terrible famine the like of which has seldom been witnessed. Private efforts were also enlisted to mitigate its horrors. The Arya Samaj was, as usual, in the forefront in these efforts and succeeded in rescuing a large number of children. Conditions have now improved.

9. Extension in Lord Linlithgow's terms of office. According to the usual practice Lord Linlithgow was to retire in 1941. But in view of the war situation his term was extended. He retired in October, 1943.

## LORD WAVELL

0 1943—

Lord Wavell is an experienced soldier who has taken part in several campaigns. He was for sometime Commander-in-Chief of India and holds the rank of Field Marshal.

His first act after taking over charge was to visit Bengal where he saw things with his own eyes. He is at present busily engaged in promoting war effort.

## SUPPLEMENT I.

### SOME HISTORICAL PERSONAGES

Tipu Sultan. (P. U. 1912-27-31-36-43.) Tipu Sultan was the brave son of Haidar Ali and succeeded his father as the Sultan of Mysore. He was a staunch Muslim and a bitter enemy of the English. He was not as capable as his father still he carried on the administration of his state quite efficiently. He fought in the second, third and fourth Mysore Wars. In the fourth Mysore War he died bravely fighting at Seringapatam in 1799. The English were thus rid of a powerful enemy.

Mahadaji Sindhia. (P. U. 1913). Mahadaji Sindhia was a powerful Maratha chief. He took part in the Third Battle of Panipat in 1761 and on account of a wound received there became lame for life. In 1771 the Mughal emperor Shah Alam left the protection of the English and came under the protection of Mahadaji Sindhia by which the influence of Sindhia considerably increased. He took a prominent part in the First Maratha War and was instrumental in concluding the Treaty of Salbai. In 1794 Mahadaji Sindhia died.

Nana Farnavis. (P. U. 1933-37) Nana Farnavis was a Maratha statesman during the latter part of the eighteenth century. He was the minister of the last two Peshwas. After the assassination of Narayan Rao he did

not let Raghoba become Peshwa but secured the succession for Madho Rao Narayan, the posthumous son of Narayan Rao. In 1795 it was through his efforts that the Nizam was defeated in the Battle of Kharda (Kurdala). Farnavis was a capable and far sighted diplomat. As long as he lived he kept the Marathas united. In 1800 he died, and with him died all moderation and statesmanship among the Marathas.

**Abalya Bai.** (P. U. 1935). Abalya Bai was a very pious and religious-minded Maratha lady. She was the daughter-in-law of Malhar Rao Holkar. For about thirty years, i. e., from 1765 to 1795 she successfully ruled over Indore. She protected the state against foreign invasions and built forts, roads and temples in the state. During her reign there was peace and prosperity in the country. On account of her piety she was held in very high esteem by the Marathas. In 1795 she died at the age of sixty.

**Raja Ram Mohan Rai.** (P. U. 1925-27 33-36). Raja Ram Mohan Rai was a well-known Hindu reformer of Bengal. He was born in 1774. At a very early age he acquired proficiency in Arabic, Persian and Sanskrit. Afterwards he learned English. He raised his voice against the social evils among the Hindus. He took steps to popularise English education in India and established a school in Calcutta for this purpose. He helped Lord William Bentinck in suppressing *Sati*. In 1828 he founded the Brahmo Samaj. In 1830 Akbar II, the Mughal emperor sent him to England as his counsel so that his allowance might be increased. But Raja Ram Mohan Rai did not succeed in this mission. In 1833 he died in England at Bristol.

**Swami Dayanand.** (P. U. 1925 39) Swami Dayanand was a well known Hindu reformer of the nineteenth century. He was the founder of the Arya Samaj. He was born in 1824 in the State of Morvi (Gujarat Kathiawar). At a very early age he took up *Sannyas*. He remained celibate all his life. He was a great scholar of Sanskrit and of the Vedas. He looked upon the Vedas as revealed books. He spent his whole life in preaching Vedic religion and in removing social evils among the Hindus. The Swami

believed in caste by *harma* and not by birth. He was opposed to idol worship; child marriage, etc. and was a supporter of the uplift of the depressed classes. In 1875 he founded the Bombay Arya Samaj and in 1877 the Lahore Arya Samaj. In 1883 he died at Ajmer. His chief publication is the *Satyarth Parkash*.

Sir Sayyad Ahmad Khan. (P. U. 1925-33-36-38). Sir Sayyad Ahmad Khan was the foremost reformer and leader of the Muslims in the 19th century. He was born in 1817 at Delhi of a good family. After receiving education in Persian and Arabic he took up Government service. In 1857 when the mutiny broke out he was Munsif at Bijnor. He rendered very valuable help to the British Government. It was his earnest desire that his co-religionists should profit by European thought and Western education. With this object in view he founded the Muhammadan Anglo-Oriental College at Aligarh in 1877 which was raised to the status of a University in 1920. He set the Muslims on the road to progress. He was a member of the Governor-General's Legislative Council. The British Government conferred the title of 'Sir' on him. He died in 1898 and was buried at Aligarh in the College compound.

---

## SUPPLEMENT II

### SOME NOTED PERSONAGES

Gopal Krishan Gokhale. Gopal Krishan Gokhale was a true patriot and a well-known Congress leader. He was born in 1866 of a Maratha family. For a time he was Professor in the Fergusson College Poona. He was the ablest moderate politician of his time, and won praise both from the Government and the Indian public. He was a member of the Governor General's Legislative Council and while there he introduced a bill which sought to make Primary Education compulsory. But this bill could not be passed. Gokhale was an orator of a high order who could keep his audiences spellbound. In 1905 he founded the Servants of India Society at Poona, which is doing good work even to-day. He died in 1915.



✓ Mahatma Gandhi. (P. U. 1928-39). Mahatma Gandhi's full name is Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi. At present he is one of the most famous men in the world. He was born on 2nd October 1869 at Porbunder in Kathiawar. After being called to the bar he began his practice at Bombay. To conduct a case he had to go to South Africa and set up his practice there. During the Boer War he helped the British a great deal. But when he found that his countrymen were badly treated there he started the Passive Resistance (Satyagrah) movement.

During the Great War he rendered valuable help to the British Government and won a silver medal but when at the conclusion of the war the Government introduced the Rowlatt Act, he started the *Satyagrah* movement in India. Next he started the *Non-Co-operation* movement as a protest against the Punjab wrongs and on the question of Khilafat. Within a few years he acquired world wide reputation. In 1930, he broke the Salt laws at Dandi and started the *Civil Disobedience* movement. In 1931 the Gandhi-Irwin Pact was concluded and he agreed to take part in the Second Round Table Conference. Next by resort to starvation unto death he got that part of the Communal Award amended by which the depressed classes were given separate representation from the caste Hindus.

In 1934 the Mahatma practically retired from politics and devoted his energies to village uplift of the depressed classes. He is a staunch supporter of *Khaddar* and *Swadeshi*. He edited *Hindustan* in which he formulated his policy on any and every question. During the present war the Mahatma had interviews with the Viceroy, but no formula has as yet been evolved. The distinguishing feature of Mahatma Gandhi's life is that he practises what he preaches.

Pt. Jawahar Lal Nehru. Pt. Jawahar Lal Nehru is a distinguished personality in India at the present day. He is the son of the late lamented Pt. Moti Lal Nehru. He was born in 1889. After being called to the bar he set up practice at Allahabad. The stirring events of 1919 made him take to politics, and he won fame in no time. In 1929 he presided over the Lahore Congress where the Resolution

of Complete Independence was passed. His intelligence and his sacrifice are unique. For the sake of the nation and the country he has several times been to jail. At present he is one of the top leaders of the Congress movement. The people have implicit faith in him. He also presided over the 1931-37 session of the Congress. He is also an author of no mean repute. He is one of the few men who are held in high esteem by Hindus and Muslims alike.

**Pt. Madan Mohan Malviya.** Pt. Madan Mohan Malviya is a true patriot and an accredited leader of the Hindu community. He was born in 1861. In early life he was a teacher. Then he passed his Law Examination and set up practice at Allahabad and began to take part in politics. Twice he was president of the Indian National Congress. He is the founder of the Benares Hindu University and was for a long time its Vice-Chancellor. He took part in the Second Round Table Conference. Now he has retired from active life and is very weak in health.

**Rabindranath Tagore.** (P. U. 1934) Rabindranath Tagore is the best-known Bengali poet and playwright. He was born at Calcutta in 1861. He received education mostly privately. He wrote books in prose and poetry, on art, religion etc. In 1913 he was awarded the Nobel Prize for his book *Gitanjali*. He was the founder of the Vishva-Bharati University at Bolpur. He travelled in many countries. The British Government conferred the title of 'Sir' on him which he resigned as a protest against the Punjab wrongs in 1919. In August 1940 the University of Oxford conferred the degree of Doctor of Literature on him. He died in 1941.

**Sir Agha Khan.** The real name of His Highness Sir Agha Khan is Agha Sultan Muhammad Shah. Agha Khan is a hereditary title which the Shah of Iran conferred on his grandfather. He was born in 1875. He is the head of the Ismaili sect of Muslims and his followers are found in East Africa, Central Asia and India. In recognition of his splendid services during the Great War, the British Government made him a *rais* of the first rank and conferred a salute of eleven guns on him. His real home is near Bombay but

he passes most of his time in Europe. He is one the richest men in the world and is very fond of horses. Some of his horses have won famous races in the world. He is a politician also and is an accredited leader of the Muslims. He took part in the Round Table Conferences.

**Sir Fazl-i-Hussain.** Mian Sir Fazl-i-Hussain was born in 1877 at Batala. After being called to the bar he set up practice first at Sialkot and then at Lahore. For several years he was a Fellow and a Syndic of the Panjab University. When the Montford Reforms were introduced he was made Education Minister in 1926. For a time he was the Revenue Member of the Executive Council of the Governor. From 1930 to 1935 he was a member of the Executive Council of the Governor-General. He died in 1939. He did a lot of good to his co-religionists and roused them from their apathy.

**Sir Muhammad Iqbal.** (P. U. 1934-39) Sir Muhammad Iqbal was born at Sialkot in 1877. He was a well-known barrister and a recognised leader of the Muslims. He was a first-rate poet of Urdu and Persian. His philosophy and poetry have won praise even from the West. For several years he was a member of the Punjab Legislative Council. He also took part in the Round Table Conferences. He was very popular among all classes of Muslims. He died in 1938.

**Mr. Jinnah.** (P. U. 1934) Mr. Muhammad Ali Jinnah was born in 1876 at Karachi. After being called to the bar he set up practice at Bombay. He is a very successful lawyer and a first-rate politician. He is a distinguished leader of the Muslims. For several years he has been a member of the Central Legislative Assembly. He took part in the Round Table Conferences. His fourteen points are considered to be the political demands of the Muslims. For this reason his name is a household word in India. He is the President of the All-India Muslim League and is called the *Qaid-i-Azam*. He has lately promulgated a scheme for the division of India into Hindu and Muslim India which latter he calls by the name of Pakistan.

**Sir Feroz Khan Noon.** Sir Feroz Khan Noon was born in 1893 of a Chief's family in Shahpur District of the Punjab.

received education first at the Chiefs' College Lahore then at Oxford. After being called to the bar he practised at Lahore for a few years. He was a member of Punjab Legislative Council. He was also a Minister for Local Self-government and then for Education. For a while he was the High Commissioner for India. At present he is the Defence Member of the Viceroy's Executive Council.

**Sir Sikandar Hayat Khan.** Sir Sikandar Hayat Khan was the Prime Minister of the Punjab from 1937 to 1942. His native village is Wah, district Campbellpore. He was born in 1892. He was educated at Aligarh and London. During the Great War he rendered distinguished services to the Government. He was the first Indian to command a Company in the War. He was a member of the Punjab Legislative Council. Then he was appointed a member of the Executive Council. For some time he even officiated as Governor. He was a director of several Joint-Stock Companies. The present war considerably raised his status. He was sent to Egypt and other war fronts. In August, 1942 he interviewed Mr. Churchill, the Prime Minister of England in Egypt. He died in December, 1942.

**Major Khizr Hayat Khan.** Major Khizr Hayat Khan is at present the Prime Minister of the Punjab. He belongs to the Tiwana family of Shahpur district. He was born in 1909 and received his education at the Chiefs' College and Government Collegé Lahore. In the Great War of 1914-18 and in the 3rd Afghan War 1919 he rendered meritorious service. At first he was not much interested in politics. In the general elections of 1937 he was returned to the Punjab Assembly and was appointed the minister for Local Self Government. On the death of Sir Sikandar Hayat Khan he became the Prime Minister. He is a nice gentleman and takes lively interest in the discussions of the Assembly.



## EVENTS

- Vasco da Gama's arrival at Calicut.  
**Incorporation of English East India Company.**  
 Madras Founded.  
 Acquisition of Bombay by the East India Company.  
 Calcutta Founded.  
 Siege of Arcot.  
**Battle of Plassey.**  
 Battle of Wandiwash.  
 Battle of Buxar.  
**Grant of Diwani of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa to the E. I. Company.**  
**The Regulating Act.**  
 Treaty of Salbai.  
**Pitt's India Act.**  
**Permanent Settlement of Bengal.**  
 Battle of Kurdala (Khadda).  
**Fourth Mysore War, Death of Tipu.**  
 Treaty of Bassein.  
**Treaty of Amritsar.**  
 Treaty of Sagauli.  
 Treaty of Yandbu.  
 Abolition of Sati.  
**Death of Maharaja Ranjit Singh.**  
 Annexation of Sindh.  
 Treaty of Lahore.  
**Indian Mutiny.**  
**Proclamation by Queen Victoria. Transfer of the Government from the Company to the Crown.**  
 Indian Councils Act.  
 Assumption of the title of *Qaisara-i-Hind* by Queen Victoria.  
 Establishment of the Panjab University.  
 Local Self-Government Act.  
 Establishment of the Indian National Congress.  
 Indian Councils Act.  
 Death of Queen Victoria.  
**Partition of Bengal.**

## SOME WELL-KNOWN DATES

YEAR	EVENTS
326 B. C.	<b>Invasion of Alexander the Great.</b>
322 B. C.	Accession of Chandragupta Maurya.
305 B. C.	Invasion of Seleucus and his defeat.
273 B. C.	Accession of Asoka.
269 B. C.	Coronation of Asoka.
261 B. C.	<b>Conquest of Kalinga.</b>
120 A. D.	Accession of Kanishka.
320 "	Gupta Dynasty comes to power.
606 "	Accession of Harsha.
643 "	The Assembly at Kanauj.
570 "	Birth of Mohammed the Prophet.
622 "	Beginning of the Hegira (Hijri) Era.
632 "	Death of the Prophet Mohammed.
712 "	Invasion of Sind by Mohammad Bin Qasim.
997 "	Accession of Mahmud of Ghazni.
1025 "	Attack on Somnath.
1030 "	Death of Mahmud.
1191 "	<b>First Battle of Tarain.</b>
1192 "	<b>Second Battle of Tarain.</b>
1398 "	<b>Invasion of Timur.</b>
1526 "	<b>First Battle of Panipat.</b>
1527 "	Battle of Kanwaha.
1556 "	<b>Second Battle of Panipat.</b>
1565 "	<b>Battle of Talikot.</b>
1576 "	Battle of Haldighat.
1611 "	Marriage of Nur Jehan with Jehangir.
1627 "	(1) Accession of Shah Jehan (2) Birth of Siwa
1657 "	<b>Illness of Shah Jehan and War of Success</b>
1658 "	Battle of Samugarh.
1672 "	Rebellion of Satnamis.
1674 "	<b>Coronation of Sivaji.</b>
1680 "	Death of Sivaji.
1707 "	<b>Death of Aurangzeb.</b>
1739 "	<b>Invasion of Nadir Shah.</b>
1761 "	<b>Third Battle of Panipat.</b>

YEAR	EVENTS
„	<b>Minto-Morley Reforms.</b>
„	Coronation Durbar.
„	<b>The Great War Begins.</b>
„	<b>Montagu-Chelmsford Reforms.</b>
„	Simon Commission visits India.
„	Earthquake at Quetta.
„	<b>Government of India Act.</b>
„	Death of King George V. Accession and Abdi- cation of Edward VIII. Accession of George VI.
„	Inauguration of New Councils.
„	<b>The Second Great (Hitler's) War Begins.</b>
„	Visits of Chiang-kai-Shek, Cripps and the Duke of Gloucester.
	Arrests of Congress leaders and consequent dis- turbances.

---